

Books are not the utterly dead things, but do contain a potency of life in them to be
 as the seed is that out of which whose progeny they are may they do produce as in a
 and the power of the intellect of that living, intelligent that be them

—John Milton

Prof RAMSINHAR SHARMA
 Principal & Controller

Dedicated to the memory of a friend

MAURICE FLOWERS M.D.

who lost his life in the service of the
Royal Canadian Mounted Police

Preface to the Second Edition

THE preparation of a new edition gives an author an opportunity to re-crystallize and possibly purify a small precipitate of knowledge gathered on the filter paper of time. Such an opportunity is appreciated.

The purpose of the book remains the same—that is to present those aspects of hematology which are significant to the medical technologist.

The material is now divided into 7 chapters. The first chapter deals with the collection and preparation of blood; the next five chapters are concerned with some 27 blood tests; and the final chapter considers the blood picture in various blood diseases.

In the first edition the contents of the text was established by the simple process of asking students and technicians their thoughts and opinions. These surveys showed that the consumers wanted a functional presentation of the subject matter used in their daily work. In addition they wanted this material presented in a manner which was interesting, clear, and concise. I endeavored to satisfy their wants.

In preparing this edition I was guided by the criticism of reviewers and suggestions from another survey.

I wish to thank the following reviewers for their criticism: Dr. C. A. Lick, Dr. Kurt Stern, Dr. Henry Hampton, Elsa S. Humke, Bentley Class, and Mrs. Addine G. Irskine. I have endeavored to correct the mistakes and to make up the shortcomings mentioned in their reviews.

I appreciate the suggestions of all those who answered the survey. In particular I wish to thank the following: Dr. R. L. Northrip, Dr. Adelaide F. Evenson, Mr. Bronnie A. Corshak, Miss Clarice Sontag, Dr. Elias Cohen, Mrs. Dale

Pierson Anna R Persich Mrs Dell Pothner Portia M Frederick Mr Jay Linnen and Mrs Hertz Seletzky I am especially grateful to Dr Eliaz Cohen who wrote detailed suggestions for the entire text

I also wish to acknowledge the help of the following Robert Pribbenow Gerald Henderson Valerie Mayfield Gertrude Denning Ann Brunner Nick Hoehn Ruthanne M Schupick Lin Kirk C Dean Hogarth and Irene Samolin

In conclusion suggestions and criticism from students technicians instructors and physicians would be appreciated

CHARLES F SEIFERD

CLENDALE ARIZONA

Contents

CHAPTER		PAGE
1	Collection and Preparation of Blood	9
	Collection of Blood	10
	Preparation of Blood	27
2	Complete Blood Count	33
	White Cell Count	33
	Red Cell Count	49
	Hemoglobin Estimation	56
	Differential White Cell Count	75
	Examination of the Stained Red Cells	91
3	Further Examinations of the Red Cells	93
	Sedimentation Rate	93
	Hematocrit Reading	101
	Sickle Cell Examination	106
	Fragility Test	109
	Reticulocyte Count	116
	Red Cell Indices	119
4	Tests Associated With Blood Coagulation	132
	Bleeding Time	133
	Coagulation Time	135
	Clot Retraction Time	139
	Prothrombin Time	140
	Platelet Count	145
	Capillary Resistance Test	150
5	Tests Related to Blood Groups	153
	Basic Theory	153
	ABO Grouping	160
	Rh Typing	163
	Cross Match	166
	Coombs Test	173
	Rh Titer	176

6	Miscellaneous Tests	179
	I I Cells	179
	Eosinophil Count	181
	Spinal Cell Count	181
	Malaria Parasites	187
	Bone Marrow Smears	189
	Heterophile Antibody Test	191
7	Blood Picture in Various Blood Diseases	196
	The Anemias	196
	The Leukemias	210
	Hemorrhagic Diseases	217
	Miscellaneous Diseases	224
	Appendix	231
	Summary of Normal Values	232
	Preparation of Solutions and Reagents	236
	Interpretation of the Terminology	244
	Registry Type Questions and Answers	250
	Bibliography	266
	Index	269

HEMATOLOGY FOR MEDICAL TECHNOLOGISTS

Chapter 1

Collection and Preparation of Blood

THIS book is concerned with the blood tests which are performed in the hematology section of a medical laboratory. These tests are performed to combat disease, restore health and lengthen life. And the technician who performs these tests not only serves a noble cause but also plays a leading role in the drama of life, death, and disease.

This chapter offers a brief discussion of the function and composition of blood and then presents the methods of obtaining and preparing blood for examination.

Function of Blood

The blood may be thought of as the body's most versatile servant. It conveys the raw materials of protoplasm to countless millions of cells operating as factories to manufacture life itself. The cells empty their waste products into its everflowing stream, and this obliging servant carries them to the kidneys and other organs of elimination. Blood aids in regulating the water content, temperature, and alkalinity of the tissues. In time of danger, it serves as a mechanized army, transporting white cells and antibodies to battle infection and disease. Quite often its factors of coagulation are called upon to help mend an abrasion, laceration, or incision. It transfers hormones from their organs of production to their organs of consumption. In order to discharge these duties, this faithful servant works day and night, traveling endless miles over the highways of an intricate system of arteries, capillaries, and veins.

Composition of the Blood

The average man has about 5 quarts of blood. This can be separated into 2 quarts of cells and 3 quarts of plasma. The cells are solids and the plasma is a liquid.

The cells are classified as white cells, red cells, and platelets. In size, the white cells are largest, next in line are the red cells, and finally the platelets. In quantity, however, the red cells greatly predominate. For every 500 red cells there are approximately 20 platelets and only 1 white cell.

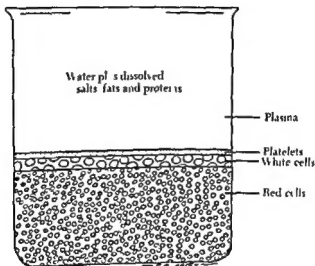


FIG. 1—Composition of the Blood

The plasma is made up of water and dissolved material, mainly salt, fats, and protein. The composition of the blood is illustrated in Figure 1.

COLLECTION OF BLOOD

In order to perform some tests, only a few drops of blood are required. These few drops may be obtained by punc-

turing a finger. For other tests however larger amounts are needed and the blood must be obtained from a vein.

This section discusses the methods of obtaining blood from a patient. The material is presented as follows:

Reassuring the Patient

Obtaining Blood from a Finger

Obtaining Blood from a Vein

Obtaining Blood from an Infant

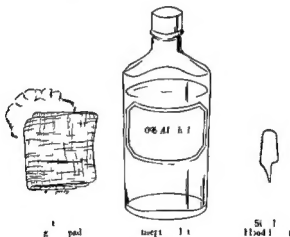


FIG. 2—Materials needed for finger puncture

Reassuring the Patient

Reassuring the patient is the first step in obtaining a sample of blood. With adults this may be accomplished by a pleasant smile, an introductory remark, or simply the stock statement, "This won't hurt very much." Such thoughtful gestures take little time and are greatly appreciated by the patient. The technician should avoid the attitude, "This is just another job. I've got to get the blood, so brace yourself."

With children extra care should be taken. Endeavor to win the child's confidence. Ask about his school games or

what he wants to be when he grows up. Tell him that it won't hurt any more than being stuck with his mother's sewing needle. A considerate technician usually has little difficulty and the display of thoughtfulness helps to condition the child for any future experiences. On the other hand a thoughtless technician not only has trouble getting the blood but may cause the child to harbor a life-long fear of the puncture.



1
FIG. 1



2
FIG. 2

Obtaining Blood from a Finger

The materials needed for a finger puncture are a cotton or gauze pad, an antiseptic solution, and a sterile blood lancet (Fig. 2)

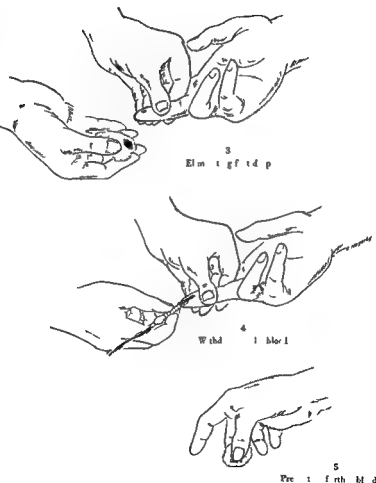


FIG. 3 —Steps in the finger puncture

The finger is cleansed with the antiseptic solution an incision is made with the sterile blood lancet and drops of blood are available for examination. A detailed explanation of each step follows.

1 *Preparing the Finger*

The finger is cleansed with a gauze pad which has been moistened with 70 per cent alcohol or some similar antiseptic. It is then dried so that the blood will form a rounded drop.

2 *Puncturing the Finger*

The tip of the finger is punctured with a sterile lancet. The puncture is made by grasping the finger firmly and making a quick deliberate stab. Since a deep puncture is not any more painful than a superficial puncture it is best to go deep enough the first time and thereby avoid puncturing the patient a second time.

3 *Eliminating the First Drop*

The first drop of blood may contain tissue juices. Also the first drop may be contaminated with extraneous material which have been clinging to the surface of the skin. When blood contains tissue juices and foreign particles it is not a true representative sample of the patient's blood. Therefore the first drop of blood is always wiped away.

4 *Withdrawing the Blood*

Gentle pressure is applied if necessary and drops of blood are taken for the desired examination. Heavy pressure should be avoided because it may cause the flow of tissue juices and dilute the blood.

5 *Preventing Further Bleeding*

When the desired amount of blood has been obtained an antiseptic pad is placed on the puncture. The patient is then instructed to apply pressure to the wound until bleeding has ceased.

The above steps in the finger puncture are illustrated in Figure 3.

Summary of the Finger Puncture

- 1 Prepare the finger
- 2 Puncture the finger
- 3 Eliminate the first drop
- 4 Withdraw the blood
- 5 Prevent further bleeding

Obtaining Blood from a Vein

When more than a few drops are required for examination the blood is obtained from the veins of the forearm wrist or ankle. Because the veins of the forearm are larger they are usually chosen. However injury or repeated venipunctures may cause them to be inaccessible because of scar tissue soreness or bandaging. Such cases make it necessary to use the veins of the wrist or ankle.

The materials needed for a venipuncture are shown in the blood tray which is illustrated in figure 4.

If the venipuncture is to be made on a patient in a hospital room or ward it is always a good idea to check the blood tray for the essential materials before leaving the laboratory.

In order to make a venipuncture of the forearm the patient and technician situate themselves so that the patient is comfortable and the technician can work with freedom of action. If the patient is not confined to bed he should be seated as this position is not only more comfortable but highly desirable in case of fainting.*

A bed patient should be asked to move to the edge of the bed and if necessary the bed table or chair are moved so that the technician can work with ease. The blood tray is placed where it is handy and yet not in danger of being upset by any unexpected movements of the patient. While these adjustments are being made the patient is being psychologically prepared for the venipuncture in the manner already suggested.

The technician then prepares the needle and syringe applies a tourniquet cleanses the skin inserts the needle into a

Should the patient faint hold a bottle of smelling salts below his nose. If smelling salts are not available a piece of cotton moistened with 10 per cent ammonium hydroxid will serve the purpose.

The finger is cleansed with the antiseptic solution an incision is made with the sterile blood lancet and drops of blood are available for examination. A detailed explanation of each step follows.

1 *Preparing the Finger*

The finger is cleansed with a gauze pad which has been moistened with 70 per cent alcohol or some similar antiseptic. It is then dried so that the blood will form a rounded drop.

2 *Puncturing the Finger*

The tip of the finger is punctured with a sterile lancet. The puncture is made by grasping the finger firmly and making a quick deliberate stab. Since a deep puncture is not any more painful than a superficial puncture it is best to go deep enough the first time and thereby avoid puncturing the patient a second time.

3 *Eliminating the First Drop*

The first drop of blood may contain tissue juices. Also the first drop may be contaminated with extraneous materials which have been clinging to the surface of the skin. When blood contains tissue juices and foreign particles it is not a true representative sample of the patient's blood. Therefore the first drop of blood is always wiped away.

4 *Withdrawing the Blood*

Gentle pressure is applied if necessary and drops of blood are taken for the desired examination. Heavy pressure should be avoided because it may cause the flow of tissue juices and dilute the blood.

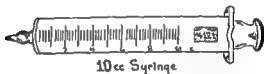
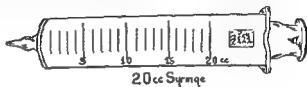
5 *Preventing Further Bleeding*

When the desired amount of blood has been obtained an antiseptic pad is placed on the puncture. The patient is then instructed to apply pressure to the wound until bleeding has ceased.

The above steps in the finger puncture are illustrated in Figure 3.

and 21 are commonly used for the veins of the forearm and gauge 23 is used for the veins of the wrist or ankle (Fig 5)

The choice of syringe is governed by the amount of blood required. A 10 cc syringe is most frequently used however if a large amount of blood is required a 20 cc syringe is employed (Fig 5)



Gauge of Barrel	Length of Barrel
-----------------	------------------

21	1 1/2 in
----	----------

21	1 1/4 in
----	----------

20	1 1/2 in
----	----------

20	1 1/4 in
----	----------

25	3/4 in
----	--------

25	1/2 in
----	--------

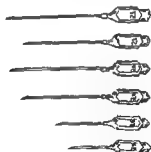


FIG 5 —Needles and syringes used for the venipuncture

When the needle and syringe have been chosen the needle is removed from its sterile container and firmly adjusted to the stem of the syringe—care being taken to keep the barrel of the needle sterile. A check is made to see that the needle is not clogged by moving the plunger up and down and attempting to force air through the needle.

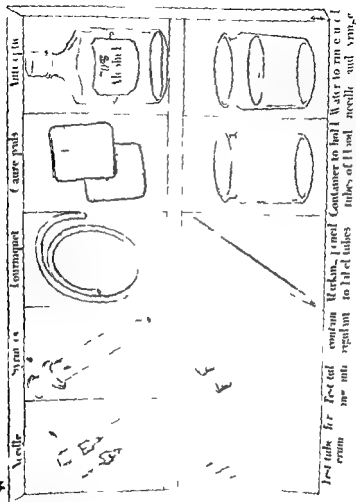


FIG. 1.—Blood tray containing materials for a venipuncture

vein and withdraws the blood. A detailed explanation of each step follows.

Preparing the Needle and Syringe

The diameter of a needle is given by its gauge number; the smaller the number, the greater the diameter. (Gauges 20

the vein. A few cubic centimeters of air pumped into a vein could cause death.

6 *Withdrawing the Blood*

When the needle enters the vein the plunger is pulled slowly back and the desired amount of blood is drawn into the syringe. Should the blood start to enter the syringe and then cease the needle may have slipped out of the vein or gone through it. If it has slipped out it should be carefully reinserted. If it has gone through it should be slowly withdrawn until it is once again in the blood stream. The touch which comes with experience is often the only means of telling whether the needle has slipped out or gone through the vein.

If the vein is small and the blood is withdrawn too fast the removal of blood from the vein may exceed the flow of blood into the vein. When this occurs blood can not be withdrawn and the vein is said to be collapsed. Sometimes the situation can be remedied by twisting the needle slightly and allowing blood to pass into the collapsed vein.

7 *Releasing the Tourniquet*

Before the needle is withdrawn the pressure must be released. Otherwise blood would continue to flow from the hole made by the needle. The pressure is removed by first instructing the patient to open his clenched fist and then releasing the tourniquet.

8 *Withdrawing the Needle*

After the tourniquet is released the needle is withdrawn. As the needle is withdrawn the antiseptic pad is applied to the puncture.

9 *Preventing Bleeding*

In order to prevent bleeding the patient is instructed to apply pressure to the antiseptic pad covering the wound. Sometimes the blood will seep into the subcutaneous tissue and leave a black and blue mark known as a hematoma.

A hematoma may be caused by (a) failure to have the

Before use all needles and syringes should be sterilized by one of the following methods: (a) autoclaving for 20 minutes at 15 pounds pressure (b) dry heating in an oven at 170°C for 2 hours or (c) boiling in water for 30 minutes and drying in an oven

2 *Applying the Tourniquet*

It is desirable to enlarge the veins of the forearm so that they may become more prominent. This is accomplished by allowing blood to enter the arm by way of the arteries and blocking its return via the veins. A tourniquet (usually a piece of rubber tubing) placed above the bend in the elbow serves the purpose. The patient is instructed to clench his fist as this aids in building up the pressure.

3 *Selecting the Vein*

The most prominent vein is usually chosen. If the veins are not visible opening and closing the fist may help to bring them out. Quite often the veins can not be seen but may be felt. They will then reveal themselves as elastic tubes beneath the surface of the skin.

4 *Applying the Antiseptic*

At the proposed site of injection an antiseptic solution is applied with a piece of cotton or gauze pad.

5 *Inserting the Needle*

Many veins have a tendency to roll over when stuck with a needle and therefore must be held in position. Some technicians fix the vein by holding it with their thumb others grasp the patient's arm just below the bend in the elbow and pull the skin taut. The needle is then held in line with the vein and inserted at approximately a 20° degree angle. From a mechanical point of view it makes little difference whether the bevel of the needle faces up or down. However most technicians prefer to have the bevel up since they feel better able to guide the passage of the needle. Precaution should always be taken against pumping air into

the vein. A few cubic centimeters of air pumped into a vein could cause death.

6 *Withdrawing the Blood*

When the needle enters the vein the plunger is pulled slowly back and the desired amount of blood is drawn into the syringe. Should the blood start to enter the syringe and then cease the needle may have slipped out of the vein or gone through it. If it has slipped out it should be carefully reinserted. If it has gone through it should be slowly withdrawn until it is once again in the blood stream. The touch which comes with experience is often the only means of telling whether the needle has slipped out or gone through the vein.

If the vein is small and the blood is withdrawn too fast the removal of blood from the vein may exceed the flow of blood into the vein. When this occurs blood can not be withdrawn and the vein is said to be collapsed. Sometimes the situation can be remedied by twisting the needle slightly and allowing blood to pass into the collapsed vein.

7 *Releasing the Tourniquet*

Before the needle is withdrawn the pressure must be released. Otherwise blood would continue to flow from the hole made by the needle. The pressure is removed by first instructing the patient to open his clenched fist and then releasing the tourniquet.

8 *Withdrawing the Needle*

After the tourniquet is released the needle is withdrawn. As the needle is withdrawn the antiseptic pad is applied to the puncture.

9 *Preventing Bleeding*

In order to prevent bleeding the patient is instructed to apply pressure to the antiseptic pad covering the wound. Sometimes the blood will seep into the subcutaneous tissue and leave a black and blue mark known as a hematoma.

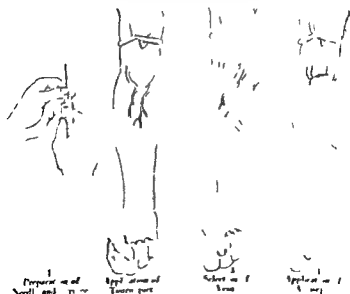
A hematoma may be caused by (a) failure to have the

needle completely in the vein (b) repeated punctures of the vein (c) failure to remove the tourniquet before withdrawing the needle and (d) failure to apply pressure to the wound for a sufficient length of time

The above steps in the venipuncture are illustrated in Figure 6

Summary of the Venipuncture

- 1 Prepare the needle and syringe
- 2 Apply the tourniquet
- 3 Select the vein
- 4 Apply the antiseptic
- 5 Insert the needle
- 6 Withdraw the blood
- 7 Release the tourniquet
- 8 Withdraw the needle
- 9 Prevent bleeding



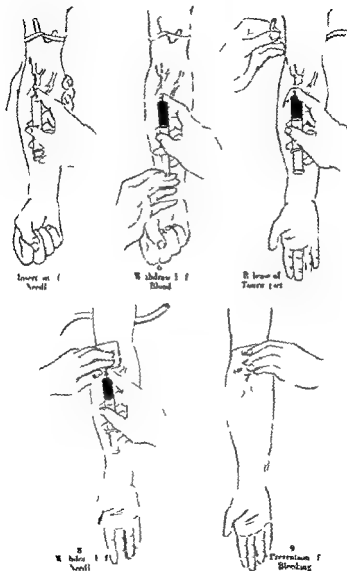


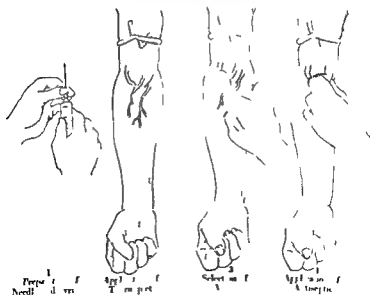
FIG 6—Steps in the venipuncture

needle completely in the vein (b) repeated punctures of the vein (c) failure to remove the tourniquet before withdrawing the needle and (d) failure to apply pressure to the wound for a sufficient length of time

The above steps in the venipuncture are illustrated in Figure 6

Summary of the Venipuncture

- 1 Prepare the needle and syringe
- 2 Apply the tourniquet
- 3 Select the vein
- 4 Apply the antiseptic
- 5 Insert the needle
- 6 Withdraw the blood
- 7 Release the tourniquet
- 8 Withdraw the needle
- 9 Prevent bleeding



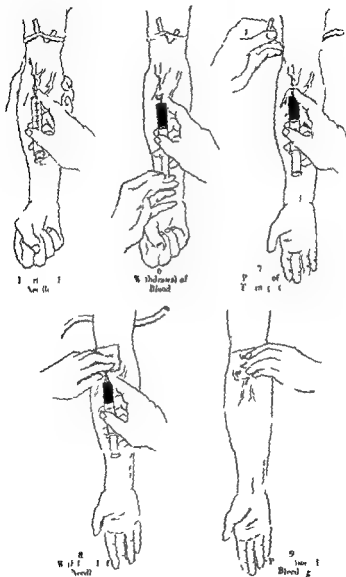
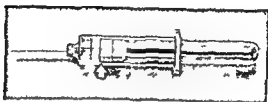
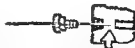


FIG. 6—Steps in the venipuncture

FIG 7 1 to I —Collecting blood by means of a B D vacutainer
(County of Beeton Dickson Company)



A SCREW NEEDLE INTO HOLDER AND PLACE TUBE IN HOLDER SO needle point just touches stopper (See cross section)



B PUSH TUBE FORWARD UNTIL TOP OF STOPPER MEETS GUIDE LINE then let go. If stopper retreats below guide line—leave in that position. This embeds full point of the needle in stopper (see cross section) thus avoiding blood leakage on entry into vein or premature loss of vacuum



(WITH REAR POINT EMBEDDED IN STOPPER ENTER TISSUE—and immediately on tissue entry complete puncture of diaphragm (see cross section))



BLOOD VESSEL

D IF IN VEIN—blood flows immediately. *NOTE:* Technician with small hands proceed as you would with a hypodermic syringe. Holder provides finger grip and tube acts as plunger (see inset) (Continued on pages 24-25)

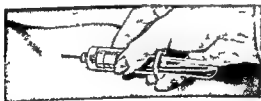


BLOOD VESSEL



BLOOD VESSEL

E IF IN TISSUE instead of vein—blood will not be drawn. Therefore continue until venipuncture is signalled by intake of blood into Vacutainer as shown in *D*



F WHERE VEIN CANNOT BE LOCATED—to conserve vacuum—release tube from rear cannula (see arrow) before withdrawing needle from tissue



F WHERE VENIPUNCTURE HAS BEEN MADE if needle is withdrawn from vein just before vacutainer is completely filled the remaining vacuum will to a great degree cleanse the needle of blood thereby simplifying final cleaning



H TO OBTAIN BLOOD DROPS grip holder as illustrated and press bottom of tube

I TO SPLIT BLOOD SAMPLES penetrate stopper of tube as illustrated

When blood is obtained by means of a venipuncture the needle should always be removed from the syringe before the blood is expelled into a test tube. If the needle is not removed the sharp point of the needle causes the rupture or hemolysis of many red cells. This hemolysis interferes in many tests.

When the blood has been completely expelled the plunger of the syringe should be separated from the barrel. If this is not done the syringe may become frozen when the blood dries up.

If the syringe does become frozen, it may be loosened by either (a) soaking in a 50-50 solution of alcohol and glycerin or (b) gently heating the barrel (causing it to expand) and then quickly pulling back the plunger before it also expands.

Many technicians make it a practice to immediately wash a used syringe and needle with cold water. Thus they remove the possibility of frozen syringes and clogged needles. This policy is highly recommended.

A new method of collecting blood is becoming popular in many hospital laboratories. It consists of drawing blood into a tube by means of a vacuum. The procedure is given in Figure 7.

Obtaining Blood from an Infant

If only a few drops of blood are needed for examination the blood may be obtained by puncturing the heel or big toe. This is done in a manner similar to obtaining blood from a finger.

If several cubic centimeters are required the blood may be obtained by making a venipuncture of the scalp or neck. This venipuncture however should be performed by a physician or experienced technician. The procedure for obtaining blood from the external jugular vein is given below.

1. Wrap the infant in a small sheet to prevent movement of arms and legs.
2. Place the infant on the edge of a table or bed so that the head just hangs over the edge.

- 3 Pin the sheet holding the baby to the table or bed
- 4 Turn the baby's head to one side and locate the external jugular vein. If the baby cries—or can be induced to cry—the external jugular vein becomes quite prominent
- 5 Sterilize the area
- 6 Attach a sterile needle to a syringe
- 7 Hold the skin taut, insert the needle, and withdraw the blood
- 8 Withdraw the needle and place a piece of cotton moistened with alcohol on the site of the puncture. Apply gentle pressure until bleeding has ceased
- 9 **NOTE** In obtaining blood from infants it is always a good policy to double check the wound and make certain that bleeding has ceased before leaving the ward or room

PREPARATION OF BLOOD

For several determinations in hematology the technician *does not have to prepare the blood*. For the majority of determinations, however, he must prepare the blood before the test can be performed. For example, in order to count the cells, the technician dilutes the blood. In order to study the different types of cells, he makes a blood smear. For other tests, he may obtain plasma or serum.

The preparations which are used in hematology are listed below and discussed on the following pages:

- 1 Diluted blood
- 2 Blood smear
- 3 Oxidized blood
- 4 Blood plasma
- 5 Blood serum
- 6 Cell suspension

1 *Diluting the Blood*

Quite often the physician seeks information regarding the number of cells in the patient's blood. This knowledge aids

him considerably in the diagnosis and treatment of many diseases. The red cells, white cells, and platelets are so highly concentrated, however, that the blood must be diluted in order to count them. The dilution is made by sucking a measured portion of blood and diluting fluid into a pipet.

2 *Making a Blood Smear*

The type, maturity, and abnormalities of both red and white cells furnish the physician with extremely significant information. In order to study the cells a blood smear is made and the cells are stained. The importance of making a good blood smear can not be overemphasized. If it is poorly made, the cells may be so distorted that it is impossible to recognize them. This is particularly true in noting changes in the size, shape, and hemoglobin content of the red cells.

The blood smear is made by placing a drop of blood on a glass slide and spreading it out so that the cells are evenly distributed. The technique is illustrated in Figure 31 on page 80.

3 *Preventing the Blood from Clotting*

The exact mechanism of blood coagulation is unknown. However, the theory of Howell offers a workable hypothesis. According to this theory, the blood plasma contains four substances which are involved in blood coagulation. These substances are antiprothrombin, prothrombin, calcium, and fibrinogen.

Antiprothrombin inactivates prothrombin and prevents the circulating blood from clotting. The blood will clot, however, if antiprothrombin can be neutralized. When the skin is broken, a substance called thromboplastin, which is contained in the tissue juices, neutralizes the antiprothrombin and allows the blood to clot.

In many cases the physician is interested in the volume occupied by the red cells and the speed of their fall. Since clotted blood can not be used to perform these tests, an agent is needed to prevent the blood from clotting. Such an agent is called an anticoagulant.

An anticoagulant prevents the blood from clotting by

either removing or inactivating one of the necessary substances in blood coagulation. For example calcium is used in the coagulation of blood. Oxalate salts remove the calcium by forming calcium oxalate.

Some of the more common anticoagulants and the amount required per cubic centimeter of blood are given in Table 1.

Table 1—Common Anticoagulants

<i>Anticoagulant</i>	<i>1mo nt per cc of Blood</i>
Mixture of ammonium oxalate and potassium oxalate	2 milligram.
Sodium citrate	10 milligrams
Heparin	0.2 milligram
Seguistrene	1 milligram

The mixture of ammonium oxalate and potassium oxalate is employed by many laboratories. Its method of preparation is given in the Appendix page 238. When this anticoagulant is used the test tube containing the powdered oxalate is commonly referred to as an oxalated tube and when blood is added it is called oxalated blood.

In order to obtain oxalated blood place about 3 cc of blood in an oxalated tube put the cork in the mouth of the tube and invert 8 to 10 times to dissolve the oxalate.

The question is frequently asked: "How long can oxalated blood sit before a test must be set up?" As a general rule oxalated blood may be preserved for about 4 hours by storing in the refrigerator. Upon removal from the refrigerator it should be thoroughly mixed by inverting the tube 10 to 15 times.

4 Obtaining the Plasma

A centrifuge is an instrument which spins fluids at a high rate of speed. This forces the solid material to the bottom and leaves the liquid portion above. A typical centrifuge with the operating directions is illustrated in Figure 8.

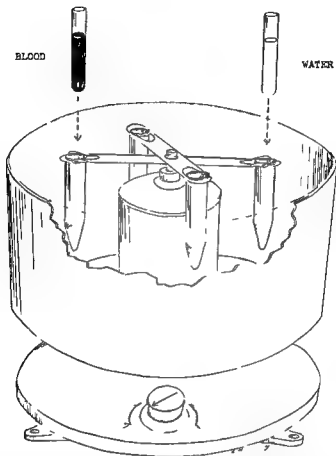


FIG 8 — Operation of Centrifuge (1) Place the test tube containing the blood in one holder (2) Place a test tube containing an *equal* amount of water in the *opposite* holder (This balances the centrifuge) (3) Turn the operating dial as far as it will go

When oxalated blood is centrifuged the cells go to the bottom of the test tube The liquid portion above the cells is blood plasma This is used to determine the prothrombin time a test which studies the speed of blood coagulation ✓

5. *Separating the Serum*

When a patient is to be given a transfusion his blood is tested for compatibility with the donor's blood. The test is called a cross match and requires a sample of the patient's serum.

The serum for the cross match is obtained by placing about 2 cc. of blood in a test tube allowing it to clot and then centrifuging. The fluid above the blood clot is serum. It differs from plasma in that it contains no fibrinogen—a substance which has been used in the formation of the blood clot.

6. *Making a Cell Suspension*

A cell suspension is used in typing and cross matching blood. It is prepared by placing 2 drops of blood in about 1 cc. of normal saline (preparation given below) and inverting several times in order to mix the cells.

Normal saline prevents the red cells from swelling or shrinking that is water neither enters nor leaves the cells. Such a solution is said to be isotonic. A salt solution which is less concentrated than normal saline is called hypotonic whereas a more concentrated solution is referred to as hypertonic.

If the red cells were placed in a hypotonic solution water would pass through the cell membrane and enter the cells. This would cause them to swell. On the other hand if the cells were put in a hypertonic solution water would leave the cells and cause them to shrink.

The student will recall from his previous studies that the above is simply an illustration of the principle of osmosis. When two liquids of different densities are separated by a semipermeable membrane (the membrane covering the cells) the flow of water is always toward the greater density.

The six different preparations of blood which have been discussed above are illustrated in Plate I.

Preparation of normal saline solution. Using the analytical balance weigh out 8.50 Gm. of sodium chloride. Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix

A summary of the tests performed in hematology and the blood preparation required is given in Table 2. Note that several of the tests require no blood preparation, the blood being used directly as it comes from the patient.

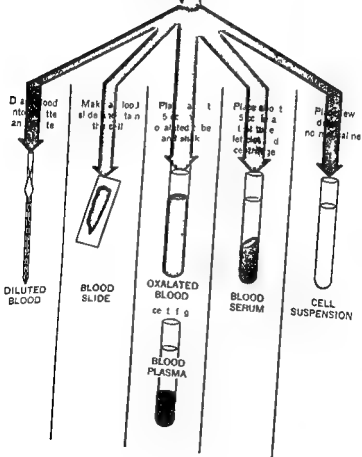
Table 2 — Summary of the Tests Performed in Hematology and the Blood Preparation Required

<i>List of Tests</i>	<i>Blood Preparation Required</i>
White cell count	Diluted blood
Red cell count	Diluted blood
Hemoglobin estimation	Diluted blood or whole blood
Differential white cell count	Blood smear
Examination of stained red cells	Blood smear
Sedimentation rate	Oxalated blood
Hematocrit reading	Oxalated blood
Sickle cell examination	None or wet preparation
Fragility test	None
Reticulocyte count	Blood smear
Bleeding time	None
Coagulation time	None
Clot retraction time	None
Prothrombin time	Blood plasma
Platelet count	Diluted blood or blood smear
Capillary resistance test	None
ABO grouping	Oxalated blood or cell suspension
Rh typing	Oxalated blood or whole blood
Cross match	Blood serum and cell suspension
Coombs test	Cell suspension or serum
Rh titer	Serum
LE cells	Blood clot
Eosinophil count	Diluted blood
Spinal cell count	None
Malaria parasites	Blood smear
Bone marrow smears	Blood smear
Heterophile antibody test	Serum

TABLE I



PATIENT'S
BLOOD



Chapter 2

Complete Blood Count

The complete blood count is a routine determination which is made on all surgical and medical patients. It furnishes the physician with information which is extremely significant in the diagnosis and treatment of many diseases. Since more than half the requisitions coming into the hematology department call for a complete blood count and questions concerning the procedure are frequently found on student examinations this chapter should be thoroughly mastered.

The complete blood count is commonly referred to as a CBC. It consists of the tests listed below.

- White cell count
- Red cell count
- Hemoglobin estimation
- Differential white cell count
- Examination of the stained red cells

These tests are discussed in detail on the following pages. A sample CBC report including the normal values is given in Figure 1.

WHITE CELL COUNT

Information Significant to the Student

The white cell count is the number of white cells in 1 cubic millimeter of blood. In health there are 5,000 to 10,000 cells per cubic millimeter. In some diseases the count rises; in other diseases the count falls. Quite often the rise and fall of the count serves as a barometer to indicate the course of a disease or the progress of infection. Thus the white cell count becomes a reliable spoke in the wheel of diagnosis and the physician turns to the technician for information regarding its deviations from normal values.

<i>Test</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
<i>White Cell Count</i>	6 800	5 000 to 10 000 per cu mm
<i>Red Cell Count</i>	4.5 million	4.0 to 5.5 million per cu mm
<i>Hemoglobin Estimation</i>	13 grams (84%)	12 to 17 grams (78 to 110%)
<i>Differential White Cell Count</i>		
Neutrophilic myelocytes	0	0%
Neutrophilic metamyelocytes	0	0%
Neutrophilic band cells	3	2 to 6%
Neutrophilic segmented cells	60	55 to 75%
Lymphocytes	32	20 to 35%
Monocytes	4	2 to 6%
Leukophilic segmented cells	1	1 to 3%
Basophilic segmented cells	0	0 to 1%
Miscellaneous white cells (plasma cells, L.M. cell, etc.)	0	0%
<i>Examination of the Stained Red Cells</i>		
Hypochromia (light mod. marked)	0	absent
Anisocytosis	0	absent
Poikilocytosis	0	absent
Miscellaneous red cells (nucleated red cells, etc.)	0	absent

FIG. II — Sample CBC report

An increase above the normal values is called a leukocytosis whereas a drop below the normal is referred to as a leukopenia. Some diseases where these abnormalities may be expected are listed below.

*High white cell count
(leukocytosis)*

leukemia
pneumonia
diphtheria
meningitis
appendicitis

*Low white cell count
(leukopenia)*

measles
influenza
brucellosis
typhoid fever
malignant neutropenia

Procedure for the White Cell Count

It is strongly urged that the student first read this entire procedure through and then perform a white cell count by following the summary on page 47

The blood for the white cell count is obtained from a finger puncture or venipuncture. The procedure for the count consists of four steps. They will be considered in detail and discussed in the following order:

- 1 Diluting the blood
- 2 Charging the counting chamber
- 3 Counting the cells
- 4 Making the calculations

1 Diluting the Blood

The dilution of the blood for the white cell count serves a dual purpose. First it facilitates the counting process by suspending and dispersing the white cells. Second it dissolves the red cells. This is essential since the red cells greatly outnumber the white cells and would therefore interfere in the count.

The blood is diluted with a weak solution of hydrochloric or acetic acid. The diluting fluids are often referred to as WBC diluting fluids, the WBC standing for white blood count. The preparation of the diluting fluids is given below.*

The dilution is made with a white cell pipet which is illustrated in Figure 10. The stem of the pipet is the portion from 0.0 to 1.0 and the mixing chamber is the bulb-like portion from 1.0 to 11.0. The volume of the stem is exactly ten times less than the volume of the mixing chamber. Thus we can say that *the stem holds 1 unit of volume and the mixing chamber holds 10 units of volume*.

Preparation of diluting fluid

- a 1% (approximate 0.1 normal) hydrochloric acid. Place 99 cc of distilled water in a container. Add 1 cc of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Mix.
- b 2% acetic acid. Place 98 cc of distilled water in a container. Add 2 cc of glacial acetic acid. Mix.

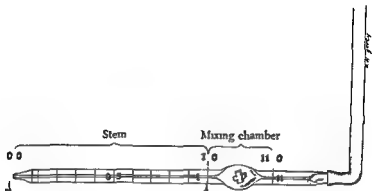


FIG 10 — White cell pipet attached to rubber sucking tube

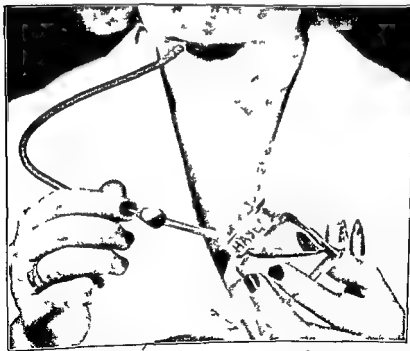


FIG 11 — Diluting the blood (From Kelmer Spaulding and Robin on *Approved Laboratory Technique* 5th edition 1951 Courtesy of Appleton Century Croft Inc.)

To dilute the blood the technician attaches one end of a rubber sucking tube to the pipet and places the other end in his mouth. He first sucks up blood then wipes the tip of the pipet with cotton and finally sucks up diluting fluid. The sucking up process is controlled with the tip of the tongue. Before detaching the rubber tube from the pipet he holds his finger over the bottom of the pipet to prevent the loss of fluid. An illustration of a technician diluting the blood is given in Figure 11.

In drawing up blood and diluting fluid the mixing chamber is filled with a solution of blood and diluting fluid. The stem of the pipet still contains diluting fluid but this is discarded later on in the procedure.

When blood is drawn to the 1.0 mark and diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark the 10 units of the mixing chamber contain 1 part blood and 9 parts diluting fluid. Since this is 1 part blood in 10 parts of solution (blood plus diluting fluid) the blood has been diluted 1 in 10. The number 10 is known as the dilution factor.

When blood is drawn to the 0.5 mark and diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark the 10 units of the mixing chamber contain 0.5 part blood and 9.5 parts diluting fluid. Since this is 0.5 part blood in 10.0 parts of solution (blood plus diluting fluid) the blood has been diluted 1 in 20. And the number 20 is the dilution factor. It should be noticed that the dilution was doubled by simply taking half the volume of blood used for the 1 in 10 dilution.

The above dilutions usually give students some trouble. A good way to remember the 1 in 20 dilution is to recall that it is somewhat similar to a nickel being one-twentieth part of a dollar. Thus we may look upon the blood as a nickel the diluting fluid 95 cents and the entire solution one dollar.

The student should note that the actual number of cubic centimeters contained in the pipet is unimportant. It is the ratio of blood to diluting fluid which is significant. For example 1 cc of blood diluted with 19 cc of diluting fluid is a dilution of 1 in 20 and the dilution factor is 20. Also 1 pint of blood diluted with 19 pints of diluting fluid is a dilution of 1 in 20 and the dilution factor is 20. Thus the exact quantity of diluted blood on hand is irrelevant. The significant

point is the degree of dilution which is expressed by the dilution factor. This will be used later on in making the calculations.*

The 1 in 10 dilution is sometimes used when the hemoglobin is very low. The 1 in 20 dilution however is used routinely. And this will be the dilution considered in our presentation of the white cell count.

Summary To dilute the blood 1 in 20

- a Draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark wiping the tip of the pipet with a piece of cotton
- b Draw WBC diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark

2 Charging the Counting Chamber

A representative sample of the solution in the mixing chamber is to be transferred to a counting chamber (Fig. 12). Therefore two procedures should be considered. First in order to insure a uniform distribution of cells the blood and diluting fluid must be well mixed. Second since the diluting fluid in the stem of the pipet did not take part in the dilution of the blood it must be discarded. These two steps should be carefully performed as illustrated below for they are often major sources of error.

The blood and diluting fluid are mixed by shaking the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes. The pipet is shaken so that it follows the curve of a quarter circle—the curve between 9 and 12 o'clock. This is accomplished by the simple wrist movement shown in Figure 13.

The bead in the mixing chamber serves two functions. First it aids in the mixing process. Second it helps identify the pipet, the white cell pipet having a white bead and the red cell pipet having a red bead.

When the solution has been well mixed the diluting fluid in the stem of the pipet is discarded by allowing the first 4 drops to flow from the pipet. This of course means that

A table of commonly used weight and measures which explains cc. and other volumes used in this chapter is given in the Appendix on page 236.

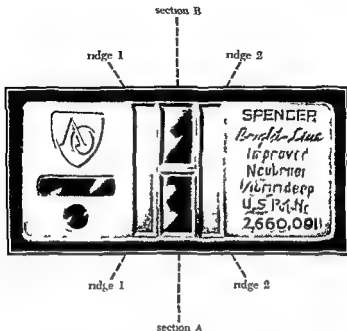


FIG. 12 —Counting chamber The *longest* sides of a small coverglass are placed on the *raised* ridge 1 and 2. This makes a tiny distance between the coverglass and section A and section B. These sections are used to count the cell. Section A is usually used for the white cell count and section B for the red cell count.

the solution in the mixing chamber will flow into the stem. A tiny portion of this solution in the stem is then allowed to seep beneath the coverglass of the counting chamber. The proper method of discarding the first 4 drops and charging the counting chamber is illustrated in Figure 14.

The above mentioned figure also illustrates a properly charged counting chamber. You will observe that only one side of the counting chamber is filled (the other side is for the red cell count). You will also note that the chamber is completely filled but not over filled or flooded. This is most

point is the degree of dilution which is expressed by the dilution factor. This will be used later on in making the calculations.*

The 1 in 10 dilution is sometimes used when the hemoglobin is very low. The 1 in 20 dilution however is used routinely. And this will be the dilution considered in our presentation of the white cell count.

Summary To dilute the blood 1 in 20

- a Draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark wiping the tip of the pipet with a piece of cotton
- b Draw WBC diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark

2 Charging the Counting Chamber

A representative sample of the solution in the mixing chamber is to be transferred to a counting chamber (Fig. 12). Therefore two procedures should be considered. First in order to insure a uniform distribution of cells the blood and diluting fluid must be well mixed. Second since the diluting fluid in the stem of the pipet did not take part in the dilution of the blood it must be discarded. These two steps should be carefully performed as illustrated below for they are often major sources of error.

The blood and diluting fluid are mixed by shaking the pipet for 1 to 3 minutes. The pipet is shaken so that it follows the curve of a quarter circle—the curve between 9 and 12 o'clock. This is accomplished by the simple wrist movement shown in Figure 13.

The bead in the mixing chamber serves two functions. First it aids in the mixing process. Second it helps identify the pipet: the white cell pipet having a white bead and the red cell pipet having a red bead.

When the solution has been well mixed the diluting fluid in the stem of the pipet is discarded by allowing the first 4 drops to flow from the pipet. This of course means that

* A table of commonly used weights and measures which explains all other volumes used in this chapter is given in the Appendix on page 236.

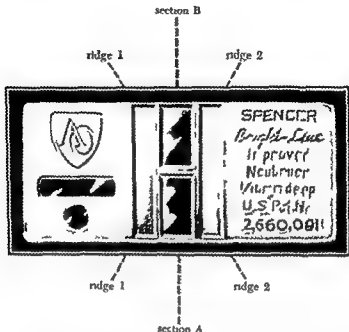


FIG. 12 —(counting chamber. The *long* at sides of a small coverglass are placed on the *assid* ridges 1 and 2. This makes a tiny distance between the coverglass and section 1 and section 2. The sections are used to count the cells. Section A is usually used for the white cell count and section B for the red cell count.

the solution in the mixing chamber will flow into the stem. A tiny portion of this solution in the stem is then allowed to seep beneath the coverglass of the counting chamber. The proper method of discarding the first 4 drops and charging the counting chamber is illustrated in figure 14.

The above mentioned figure also illustrates a properly charged counting chamber. You will observe that only one side of the counting chamber is filled (the other side is for the red cell count). You will also note that the chamber is completely filled but not over filled or flooded. This is most

important If you fail to fill the counting chamber in the proper manner simply wipe the chamber and coverglass with a soft cloth and try again

P pet m a b c k d f i h
 f l i w i t h e r e o f
 q r t c l e N t i h t
 p p t l w s p p e d l a r
 t t h e b o d y (p l l t o z h
 f l o o)



FIG 13 —Proper method of shaking a pipet

Summary To charge the counting chamber

- a Shake the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes
- b Discard the first 4 drops
- c Transfer a *tiny* portion of the solution to the counting chamber

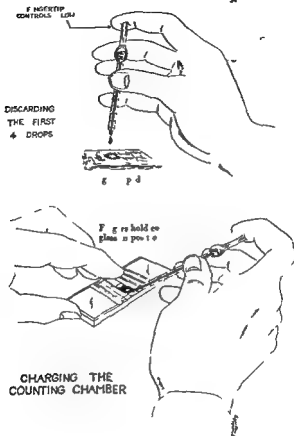


FIG 14 — Discarding the first 4 drops and charging the counting chamber

3 Counting the Cells

The count is made by means of a microscope which is illustrated in Figure 10. You will note that there are 3 magnifying devices or objectives. These objectives are called the low power objective, the high power objective and the oil immersion objective.

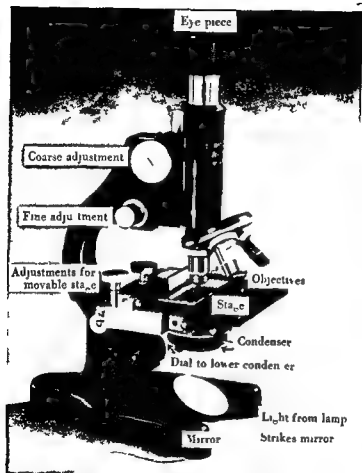


FIG. 15—Microscope

When the low power objective is used the cells are magnified 100 times. This objective is used for the white cell count. It is usually labelled 10X or 16 mm.

When the high power objective is used the cells are magnified 400 times. This objective is used for the red cell count. It is usually labelled 40X or 4 mm.

When the oil immersion objective is used the cells are magnified 1000 times. This objective is used for the differential white cell count. It is usually labelled 95X or *oil immersion*. The name is derived from the fact that a drop of oil is put on the slide and the objective is then immersed in this oil.

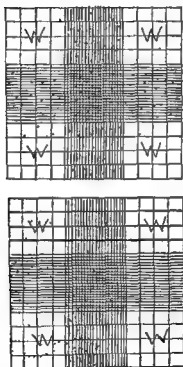


FIG. 16 — Good and poor distribution of cells

In order to see the cells (1) The counting chamber is placed on the stage of the microscope (2) the low power (16 mm) objective is switched into position over the counting chamber (3) the light is first centered up through the eye piece by adjusting the mirror (4) the light is then dimmed

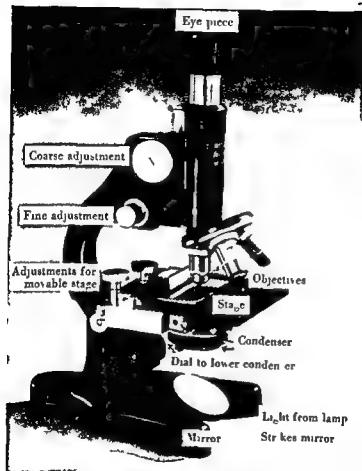
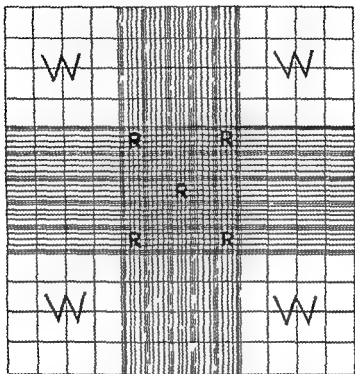


FIG. 15—Microscope

When the low power objective is used the cells are magnified 100 times. This objective is used for the white cell count. It is usually labelled $10\times$ or 16 mm.

When the high power objective is used the cells are magnified 400 times. This objective is used for the red cell count. It is usually labelled $40\times$ or 4 mm.



Area of 1W section = 1 sq. mm (for counting white cells)

Area of 1R section = 0.04 sq. mm (for counting red cells)

NOTE: 1R section is composed of 16 small squares each small square being 0.0025 sq. mm.

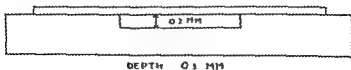


FIG. 1 —The area and depth of the counting chamber

ished by lowering the condenser and (5) the cells are brought into focus by moving the coarse and fine adjustments

By adjusting the movable stage of the microscope one of the 'W' (white) sections in Figure 16 is brought into view. Each 'W' section is made up of 16 small squares. One whole 'W' section will occupy a single microscopic field.

A survey of the 4 'W' sections is then made to see if the cells are evenly distributed. If the cells are evenly distributed it indicates that the mixing process was satisfactory and that the diluting fluid in the stem of the pipet was discarded. However, if the distribution is poor either or both of these steps were not satisfactorily completed. In such cases, the counting chamber should be wiped clean, the mixing process repeated and the chamber charged again. Good and poor distribution of cells is illustrated in Figure 16.

As indicated in Figure 17 each 'W' section has an area of 1.0 square millimeter and a depth of 0.1 millimeter. Its volume is found as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{area} & \times \text{depth} & = \text{volume} \\ 1.0 \text{ mm} & \times 0.1 \text{ mm} & = 0.1 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

Thus the volume of each 'W' section is 0.1 cubic millimeter. The total volume of the four 'W' sections is found as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Number of} & \times \text{Vol of} & \text{Total vol of} \\ \text{'W' sect} & \times 1 \text{ 'W' sect} & = 4 \text{ 'W' sect} \\ 4 & \times 0.1 \text{ cu mm} & = 0.4 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

Thus the total volume of the four 'W' sections is 0.4 cubic millimeter. When the cells in the four 'W' sections are counted and added, the total is the number of cells in 0.4 cubic millimeter of solution.

Summary To count the cells

- a Bring the cells into focus with the low power (16 mm.) objective
- b Check the distribution of the cells
- c Count the cells in each of the four 'W' sections
- d Add the four counts

Summary To make the calculations

- a Multiply the total number of cells in the four W sections by 50

Summary of the Procedure for the White Cell Count

After reading the foregoing discussion perform a white cell count by following the steps in the summary below. If you have trouble with any of the steps simply refer back to the detailed discussion. It is to be expected that mistakes will be made. Therefore do not get discouraged simply practice until you master the technique

- ✓ 1 Dilute the blood 1 in 20
 - a Draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark wiping the tip of the pipet with a piece of cotton
 - b Draw WBC diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark
- 2 Charge the counting chamber
 - a Shake the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes
 - b Discard the first 4 drops
 - c Transfer a *tiny* portion of the solution to the counting chamber
- 3 Count the Cells
 - a Bring the cells into focus with the low power (16 mm) objective
 - b Check the distribution of the cells
 - c Count the cells in each of the four W sections
 - d Add the four counts
- 4 Make the Calculations
 - a Multiply the total number of cells in the four W sections by 50

✓ Major Sources of Error in the White Cell Count JJ

- 1 Failure to draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark
- 2 Failure to shake the pipet thoroughly
- 3 Failure to discard the first 4 drops
- 4 Failure to properly charge the counting chamber

4 Making the Calculations

The white cell count is the number of white cells in 10 cubic millimeter of *undiluted* blood. But we counted the number in 0.4 cubic millimeter of *diluted* blood. Therefore we must multiply the number counted by two correction factors.

The first correction factor compensates for the dilution of the blood. Since we diluted the blood 1 in 20, the dilution correction factor is 20. Of course if we had diluted the blood 1 in 10, the dilution correction factor would be 10.

The second correction factor compensates for the volume in which the cells were counted. Since we counted the cells in 0.4 cubic millimeter and not in 1.0 cubic millimeter, we must multiply by a volume correction factor. This is found as follows:

$$\text{Vol cor factor} = \frac{\text{volume desired}}{\text{volume used}} = \frac{1.0 \text{ cu mm}}{0.4 \text{ cu mm}} = 2.5$$

When the total number of cells in the four W sections is multiplied by the above correction factors of 20 and 2.5, the number of cells in one cubic millimeter of blood is obtained. This is the white cell count.

To illustrate, if the total number of cells in the four W sections is 100, the calculation is made as follows:

Number of cells in 0.4 cu mm (4 W sections)	×	Dil cor factor	×	Vol cor factor	=	Number of cells in 1.0 cu mm
100	×	20	×	2.5	=	5000

Since the product of the dilution and volume correction factors is 50 ($20 \times 2.5 = 50$), the calculation can be made by simply multiplying the number of cells in the four W sections by 50. Thus:

Number of cells in 0.4 cu mm (4 W section)	×	Correc- tion factors	=	Number of cell in 1.0 cu mm
100	×	50	=	5000

RED CELL COUNT

Information Significant to the Student

The red cell count is the number of red cells in one cubic millimeter of blood. The normal values are 4.0 to 5.0 million cells per cubic millimeter. A decrease in the count may be found in the anemias and leukemias. An increase in the count may be seen in polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions. Consequently, when the physician is diagnosing or treating the above cases, his inquiry is brought to focus on the red cell count. ✓

Procedure for the Red Cell Count

It is strongly recommended that the student first read this entire procedure through and then perform a red cell count by following the summary on page 54.

The blood for the red cell count is obtained from a finger puncture or venipuncture. The procedure follows the same general pattern as the white cell count. It is broken down into the following four steps which will be discussed in detail.

- 1 Diluting the blood
- 2 Charging the counting chamber
- 3 Counting the cells
- 4 Making the calculations

1 Diluting the Blood

The diluting fluid used for the red cell count is either Hayem's solution or Cowser's solution. These solutions are isotonic with the red cells and thereby prevent the cells from swelling or shrinking. The diluting fluids are commonly referred to as RBC (red blood count) diluting fluids. Their method of preparation is given in the Appendix.

The red cell pipet which is used to make the dilution is illustrated in Figure 19. This pipet may be readily distinguished from the white cell pipet since it either has a red bead in the mixing chamber or a red stripe on the stem. The stem of the pipet is the portion from 0.0 to 1.0 and the mixing chamber is the bulb-like portion from 1.0 to 101. The stem

Cleaning the Counting Chamber and Pipets

Immediately after use the counting chamber and cover glass should be cleaned with a soft cloth

The white cell pipet and red cell pipet are cleaned by means of a suction which is attached to a faucet. The procedure follows

- 1 Attach the suction to a faucet as illustrated in Figure 18
- 2 Insert the pipet in the rubber tube as illustrated
- 3 Turn the faucet on full force
- 4 Allow the pipet to suck up first distilled water then alcohol and finally ether
- 5 NOTE Some technicians do not use the alcohol and ether. They simply clean the pipets with distilled water and place them in a drying oven to dry. This procedure is quite satisfactory and—less expensive

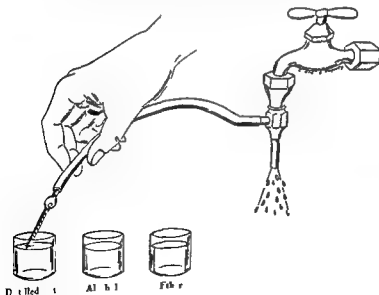


FIG 18 —Cleaning a pipet

- c Transfer a *tiny* portion of the solution to the counting chamber

3 Counting the Cells

The counting chamber is first placed on the stage of the microscope. By adjusting the mirror the light is centered up through the eye piece. With the low power (16 mm) objective the central ruled area (the area containing the 5 R sections in Figure 17 page 45) is brought into view. The light is then made suitable by moving the condenser up or down.

The distribution of the cells is now checked. If the distribution is poor the mixing process is repeated and the chamber is charged again. However if the distribution is good the high power (4 mm) objective is switched into position over the counting chamber. The cells should then be in focus. If not they are brought into focus by using the *fine adjustment* of the microscope. In this step the student should take particular precautions against moving the fine adjustment to the point where the objective touches or puts pressure upon the coverglass. Such pressure could break the coverglass or even the counting chamber.

One of the R sections illustrated in Figure 17 is then brought into view. An R section is made up of 16 small squares. Since the high power (4 mm) objective is being used one whole R section will occupy a single microscopic field.

Each R section has an area of 0.04 square millimeter and a depth of 0.1 millimeter. Its volume is found as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Area of 1} & \text{Depth of 1} & \text{Vol of 1} \\ \text{R section} \times \text{R section} & = & \text{R section} \\ 0.04 \text{ sq mm} \times 0.1 \text{ mm} & = & 0.004 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

Thus each R section has a volume of 0.004 cubic millimeter. The total volume of the five R sections is found as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Number of} & \text{Vol of 1} & \text{Total vol of} \\ \text{R sections} \times \text{R section} & = & \text{5 R sections} \\ 5 \times 0.004 \text{ cu mm} & = & 0.02 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

contains 1 unit of volume and the mixing chamber holds 100 units of volume

When blood is drawn to the 0.5 mark and diluting fluid to the 101 mark the 100 units of the mixing chamber contain 0.5 units of blood and 99.5 units of diluting fluid. Since this is 0.5 part blood in 100 parts of solution (blood plus diluting fluid) the blood has been diluted 1 in 200. The number 200 is the dilution factor.

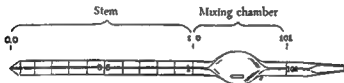


FIG. 19 —Red cell pipet

Summary To dilute the blood 1 in 200

- a Draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark wiping the tip of the pipet with cotton
- b Draw RBC diluting fluid to the 101 mark.

2 Charging the Counting Chamber

The cells and diluting fluid are thoroughly mixed by shaking the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes. Next the diluting fluid in the stem is discarded by letting the first 4 drops flow from the pipet. A tiny portion of the solution is then transferred to the counting chamber and the cells are given a few minutes to settle.*

Summary To charge the counting chamber

- a Shake the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes
- b Discard the first 4 drops

In a complete blood count if the white cell count is done first the red cells can be settling out while the white cells are being counted. Doing the white cell count first has other advantages. First when the low power objective is switched to the high power objective for the red cell count the cells can be brought into view without focusing the microscope. Thus a step is saved. Second coverslips are frequently broken by students trying to bring the field into focus with the high power objective. Thus a coverslip may be saved.

In order to obtain some measure of uniformity in counting cells which touch boundary lines of the R sections the cells touching *any* of the boundary lines on the left side and top of the R section are counted whereas cells touching *any* of the boundary lines on the right side and bottom of the R section are not counted. This is illustrated in Figure 20.

Summary To count the cells

- a Bring the central portion of the ruled area into focus with the low power (16 mm) objective
- b Check the distribution of the cells
- c Switch to the high power (4 mm) objective
- d Count the cells in the 5 R sections
- e Add the five counts

4. Making the Calculations

The red cell count is the number of red cells in 1.0 cubic millimeter of *undiluted* blood. But we counted the number in 0.02 cubic millimeter of *diluted* blood! Therefore we must multiply the number counted by two correction factors.

The first correction factor compensates for the dilution of the blood. Since we diluted the blood 1 in 200 the dilution correction factor is 200.

The second correction factor compensates for the volume in which the cells were counted. Since we counted the cells in 0.02 cubic millimeter and not in 1.0 cubic millimeter we must multiply by a volume correction factor. This is found as follows:

$$\text{Vol cor factor} = \frac{\text{volume of undiluted}}{\text{volume used}} = \frac{1.00 \text{ cu mm}}{0.02 \text{ cu mm}} = 50$$

When the total number of cells in the 5 R sections is multiplied by the above correction factors of 200 and 50 the number of cells in 1.0 cubic millimeter of blood is obtained. This is the red cell count.

To illustrate if a total of 500 cells were counted in the 5 R sections the calculation is made as follows:

Thus the total volume of the five R sections is 0.02 cubic millimeter

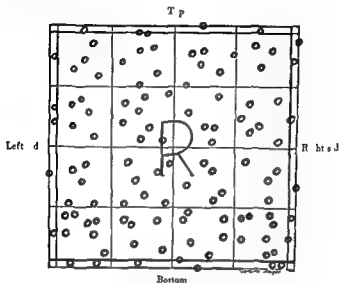


FIG 20 —Counting the Red Cells Some counting chambers like the one shown above have 2 lines which serve as boundary lines for each R section. Other counting chambers however may have 3 lines. In counting cell count the cells touching any of the boundary lines on the left side and top of the R section. Do not count the cells touching any of the boundary lines on the right side and bottom of the R section. In the above illustration the count by each small square is given below the total count for the whole R section being 99

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
 0 & \rightarrow & 7 & \rightarrow & 7 & \rightarrow & 4 \\
 & & & & & & \downarrow \\
 7 & \leftarrow & 8 & \leftarrow & 5 & \leftarrow & 6 \\
 \downarrow & & & & & & \\
 6 & \rightarrow & 7 & \rightarrow & 5 & \rightarrow & 4 \\
 & & & & & & \downarrow \\
 8 & \leftarrow & 5 & \leftarrow & 6 & \leftarrow & 8
 \end{array}$$

When the cells in the five R sections are counted and added the total is the number of cells in 0.02 cubic millimeter of solution. White cells are often mistaken for red cells but their number is so few that they do not interfere in the count.

- Switch to the high power (4 mm) objective
- d Count the cells in the five R sections
- e Add the five counts
- 4 Make the calculations
 - a Multiply the total number of cells in the five R sections by 10 000

Major Sources of Error in the Red Cell Count

- 1 Failure to draw blood *exactly* to the 0.5 mark
- 2 Failure to shake the pipet thoroughly
- 3 Failure to discard the first 4 drops
- 4 Failure to properly charge the counting chamber

Number of cells in 0.02 cu mm (5 R sections)	Dil × cor factor	Vol × cor factor	= Number of cells in 1.0 cu mm
500	× 200	× 50	= 5 000 000

Since the product of the dilution and volume correction factors is 10 000 ($200 \times 50 = 10\,000$) the calculation can be made by simply multiplying the total number of cells in the five R sections by 10 000. Thus

Number of cells in 0.02 cu mm (5 R section)	Correction × factors	= Number of cells in 1 cu mm
500	× 10 000	= 5 000 000

Summary : To make the calculations

- a Multiply the total number of cells in the five R sections by 10 000

Summary of the Procedure for the Red Cell Count

After reading the foregoing discussion the student should perform a red cell count by following the steps in this summary. If he has trouble with any of the steps he should refer back to the detailed discussion.

- 1 Dilute the blood 1 in 200
 - a Draw blood *exactly* to the 0.1 mark wiping the tip of the pipet with cotton
 - b Draw RBC diluting fluid to the 10.1 mark
- 2 Charge the counting chamber
 - a Shake the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes
 - b Discard the first 4 drops
 - c Transfer a *tiny* portion of the solution to the counting chamber
- 3 Count the cell
 - a Bring the central portion of the ruled area into focus with the low power (16 mm) objective
 - b Check the distribution of the cells

compared with the normal value for the particular instrument being used and the report is given in per cent of this normal value

To illustrate if a person has a hemoglobin of 14 grams and the normal value for the hemoglobinometer is also 14 grams he has a hemoglobin of 100 per cent. A person with a hemoglobin of 7 grams would thus have a hemoglobin of 50 per cent

Unfortunately different hemoglobinometers have different normal values. One hemoglobinometer may designate 14 grams as the normal value and consider this equivalent to 100 per cent. Another instrument may designate 16 grams as the normal value and consider this equivalent to 100 per cent. Thus a person with 15 grams of hemoglobin would be over 100 per cent with the first instrument and under 100 per cent with the second instrument

It is apparent that reporting hemoglobin in per cent has led to considerable confusion. Many authorities therefore stress the necessity of doing away with the per cent and reporting only the grams of hemoglobin. However the habit of discussing hemoglobin in percentage is rather deeply entrenched in the medical profession. Consequently in order to alleviate the situation whenever the hemoglobin is reported in percentage the number of grams it represents should also be given

Procedures for the Hemoglobin Estimation

The methods of determining hemoglobin may be divided into two groups: visual methods and photoelectric methods.

Some visual methods compare the blood directly with colored standards. Other visual methods convert the hemoglobin to acid hematin and then compare it with colored standards.

Some photoelectric methods determine the hemoglobin as oxyhemoglobin. This method is based on the fact that oxyhemoglobin has a characteristic color. The intensity of this color is a measure of the hemoglobin present. Other photoelectric methods determine the hemoglobin as cyanmethemoglobin. This method calls for the conversion of all the differ-

HEMOGLOBIN ESTIMATION

Information Significant to the Student

Hemoglobin is made up of 2 substances. One substance is heme, an organic compound of iron. The other substance is globin, one of the simple proteins. Under normal conditions, hemoglobin is contained only in the red cells. In certain diseases, however, it may be found in the blood plasma. In such cases, the condition is referred to as hemoglobinemia.

Since hemoglobin forms a temporary union with oxygen, it enables oxygen to be transported from the lungs to the tissues. It is also instrumental in conveying carbon dioxide from the tissues to the lungs. When hemoglobin is laden with oxygen on its way to the tissues, it is called oxyhemoglobin. On the return trip to the lungs, it is known as reduced hemoglobin.

The normal values for hemoglobin are 12 to 17 grams per 100 cubic centimeters of blood. Decreased values are found in anemia and leukemia. Increased values are found in polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions.

There are several factors apart from disease, however, which affect the hemoglobin concentration. These factors are age, locality, and sex.

In infants, for example, it is not uncommon to find a hemoglobin of 17 grams. This same figure, although normal for infants, would be considered extremely high for women.

The locality in which a person lives may also affect the hemoglobin. For example, people living in mountainous regions, such as Denver, normally have a higher hemoglobin than other people.

And then there is the factor of sex. To illustrate, a hemoglobin of 10.5 grams in a pregnant woman may go unnoticed. But the same figure in an apparently healthy man might cause the physician to raise his eyebrows.

There are many different instruments for measuring hemoglobin. These instruments are called hemoglobinometers. The various hemoglobinometers measure the hemoglobin in grams per 100 cc. of blood. The number of grams is then

compared with the normal value for the particular instrument being used and the report is given in per cent of this normal value.

To illustrate if a person has a hemoglobin of 14 grams and the normal value for the hemoglobinometer is also 14 grams he has a hemoglobin of 100 per cent. A person with a hemoglobin of 7 grams would thus have a hemoglobin of 50 per cent.

Unfortunately different hemoglobinometers have different normal values. One hemoglobinometer may designate 14 grams as the normal value and consider this equivalent to 100 per cent. Another instrument may designate 16 grams as the normal value and consider this equivalent to 100 per cent. Thus a person with 15 grams of hemoglobin would be over 100 per cent with the first instrument and under 100 per cent with the second instrument.

It is apparent that reporting hemoglobin in per cent has led to considerable confusion. Many authorities therefore stress the necessity of doing away with the per cent and reporting only the grams of hemoglobin. However the habit of discussing hemoglobin in percentage is rather deeply entrenched in the medical profession. Consequently in order to alleviate the situation whenever the hemoglobin is reported in percentage the number of grams it represents should also be given.

Procedures for the Hemoglobin Estimation

The methods of determining hemoglobin may be divided into two groups: visual methods and photoelectric methods.

Some visual methods compare the blood directly with colored standards. Other visual methods convert the hemoglobin to acid hematin and then compare it with colored standards.

Some photoelectric methods determine the hemoglobin as oxyhemoglobin. This method is based on the fact that oxyhemoglobin has a characteristic color. The intensity of this color is a measure of the hemoglobin present. Other photoelectric methods determine the hemoglobin as cyanmethemoglobin. This method calls for the conversion of all the differ-

ent forms of hemoglobin (except sulphemoglobin) to cyanmethemoglobin

The procedures for the estimation of hemoglobin are listed below and given on the following pages. The student should first determine which of these procedures is being used in his particular laboratory. He should then make a superficial reading of all the procedures and a careful reading of the procedure which he will use.

1. *Drac Method*
2. *Tallqvist Method*
3. *Spencer Method*
4. *Sahli Hellige Method*
5. *Haden Hausser Method*
6. *Leitz Photrometer Procedure*
7. *Hellige Clinical Procedure*
8. *Brusch & Lomb Spectronic 20 Procedure*
9. *Photovolt I umetron Procedure*
10. *Coleman Spectrophotometer Procedure*

1 DARE METHOD

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture and the Dare hemoglobinometer (Fig 21)
- 2 Make the finger puncture wipe away the first drop of blood and allow a drop to be drawn between the glass plates of the instrument
- 3 Press the button to light the bulb match the color of the blood with the color scale and take the reading
- 4 Report the method used the grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood and the per cent



FIG 21 —Dare hemoglobinometer

2 TALLQVIST METHOD

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture and the Tallqvist hemoglobin scale (Fig 22)
- 2 Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop of blood and place a drop on a piece of the absorbent paper which comes with the scale
- 3 Find the color on the scale which matches the color of the blood and take the reading
- 4 Report the method used the grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood and the per cent (see conversion table below)

Table 3—The Tallqvist Conversion Table

Gm	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
%	63	126	189	252	315	378	441	504	567
Gm	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
%	630	693	756	819	882	945	1008	1071	1134

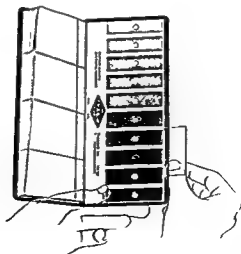


FIG 22—Tallqvist hemoglobin scale

3 SPENCER METHOD

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture and the Spencer hemoglobinometer (Fig 23)
- 2 Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop of blood and place a drop on the open chamber of the hemoglobinometer. Hemolyze the blood by stirring with the applicator and close the chamber
- 3 Press the illuminating switch look through the eyepiece match the colors and take the reading
- 4 Report the method used the grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc of blood and the per cent

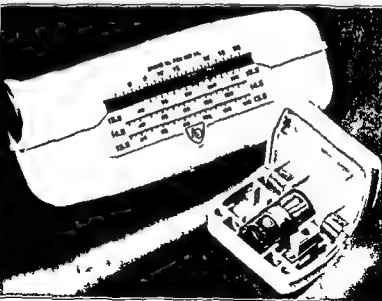


FIG 23 —Spencer hemoglobinometer

4 SAHLI HELLIGE METHOD

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture 1 bottle of 1% (approximately 0.1 normal) hydrochloric acid 1 pipet for measuring 20 cu. mm. of blood and the Sahli Hellige hemoglobinometer (Fig. 24). Preparation of 1% hydrochloric acid is given in Appendix on page 240.
- 2 Fill the graduated tube of the hemoglobinometer to the 10 mark with the 1% hydrochloric acid.
- 3 Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop and draw blood into the pipet to the 20 mark. Wipe the tip of the pipet and expel the blood into the graduated tube. Rinse the pipet several times by first drawing the solution up and then expelling it back into the graduated tube.
- 4 Add distilled water drop by drop mixing after each addition until the color of the solution matches the color of the standard. Take the reading corresponding to the height to which the solution has risen.
- 5 Report the method used the grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood and the per cent (see conversion table below).

Table 4 —The Sahli-Hellige Conversion Table

Cm	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
%	6.5	13.0	19.5	26.0	32.5	39.0	45.5	51.9	58.4

Cm	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
%	64.9	71.4	77.9	84.4	90.9	97.4	103.9	110.4	116.9



303-H

FIG. 21 —Sahli-Hellige hemoglobinometer
(Courtesy of Hellige, Inc.)

5 HADEN-HAUSSER METHOD

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture ■ white cell pipet and a bottle of 1% hydrochloric acid (preparation given in Appendix on page 240)
- 2 Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop draw blood to the 0.5 mark of the pipet and the hydrochloric acid to the 11.0 mark (This is the same as the usual 1 in 20 dilution for the white cell count. If the patient ■ anemic make a 1 in 10 dilution by drawing blood to the 1.0 mark and diluting fluid to the 11.0 mark. The hemoglobin reading is then divided by 2 in order to compensate for this decreased dilution.)
- 3 Discard the first 4 drops and fill the trough of the hemoglobinometer (Fig. 25). Match the color of the blood with the scale and take the reading.
- 4 Report the method used, the grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc. of blood and the percent (see conversion table below)

Table 5—The Haden Hausser Conversion Table

Gm	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
%	6.5	13.0	19.5	26.0	32.5	39.0	45.5	51.9	58.4
Gm	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
%	64.9	71.4	77.9	84.4	90.9	97.4	103.9	110.4	116.9

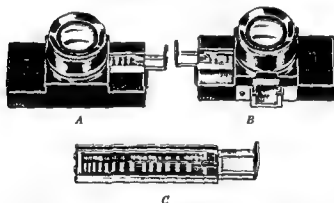


FIG. 2.—Haden Hausser hemoglobinometer (clinical model). This instrument uses the same principle as the larger laboratory model but has no built in light source. *A* front view showing comparator slide in position. *B* rear view showing light filter in position. *C* comparator slide with color glass in position. (From Haden Principles of Hematology.)

6 LEITZ PHOTROMETER PROCEDURE (*Courtesy F. Leitz Co.*)*Hemoglobin*

Sheard and Sanford Peters and Van Slyke *Am J Clin Path* 3:412 1933 *Quantitative Clinical Chemistry*
 Vol I—Interpretations The Williams and Wilkins Co
 Baltimore 1932

Draw finger tip or oxalated blood to the first mark (0.025 cc) on the hemoglobin pipet

Dilute with 0.1% sodium carbonate to the 5.025 cc graduation. Assist in accurately stopping at the meniscus by slight pressure of the finger on the rubber tubing at tip of pipet

Expel directly into an absorption cell

Let stand 5 minutes

Read in LEITZ PHOTROMETER with filter 100

Determine concentration in grams from table

Calculate per cent hemoglobin as follows

$$\frac{\text{grams hemoglobin}}{\text{considered normal}} \times 100 = \text{per cent}$$

Example

$$\frac{13.90}{15.5} \times 100 = 90\%$$

where 13.90 is the number of grams hemoglobin found and 15.5 is the considered equivalent of 100%



FIG 96.—Leitz photometer

7 HELICF CLINICOL PROCEDURE (Courtesy Hellic Inc)

Hemoglobin (Oxyhemoglobin)

Sheard and Sanford Am J Clin Path 3 412 1933

- 1 Pipette exactly 4.0 ml Sodium Carbonate 0.1% (No R-319) into a clean dry absorption cell No 904
- 2 Add 20 cmm fresh or oxalated blood. Rinse pipette by drawing up and expelling some of the mixture several times. If finger tip blood is used the specimen must be obtained without pressure from a free-flowing incision
- 3 Stir blood suspension thoroughly with a glass rod
- 4 Place approximately 5 ml distilled water in a second absorption cell for use as the blank
- 5 Rotate filter selector of ClinCol to filter No 520
- 6 Insert absorption cell containing the blank and set meter to 100. IMPORTANT Absorption cells must always be inserted with a frosted side facing the operator
- 7 Replace absorption cell containing the blank with absorption cell containing the unknown
- 8 Note meter reading and obtain result in grams hemoglobin per 100 ml blood directly from hemoglobin (oxyhemoglobin) calibration chart

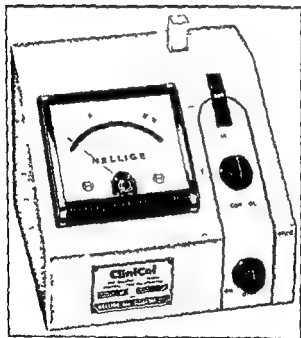


FIG. 2 — Helige ClinCol

8 BAUSCH & LOMB SPECTRONIC 20 PROCEDURE (*Courtesy Bausch & Lomb Co*)

Hemoglobin

Cyanmethemoglobin Method

- 1 Into 2 colorimeter tubes pipette exactly 5 ml Drabkin's solution (for preparation see Appendix)
- 2 In one tube add 0.02 ml whole blood (unknown) : Rinse pipette several times by drawing some of the liquid into the pipette and expelling
- 3 Mix contents of tube by swirling
- 4 The other tube is the blank
- 5 Allow tubes to stand for 10 minutes
- 6 Set wavelength at 540 mμ and then place blank tube in instrument and set 100% T
- 7 Replace blank with unknown
- 8 Refer transmission reading to table to obtain concentration of sample in grams hemoglobin per 100 ml of blood

Reference

- 1 S Armed Forces Medical Journal Vol V No 1, 693 (May 1944)

Notes

- 1 Drabkin's solution contains cyanide When filling pipettes a suction bulb should be used
- 2 Drabkin's solution should not be used after precipitate has formed on bottom of storage bottle



FIG 29 —Bau h & Lomb Spectronic 90

8 BAUSCH & LOMB SPECTRONIC 20 PROCEDURE (Courtesy
Bausch & Lomb Co)

Hemoglobin

Cyanmethemoglobin Method

- 1 Into 2 colorimeter tubes pipette exactly 5 ml Drabkin's solution (for preparation see Appendix)
- 2 In one tube add 0.02 ml whole blood (unknown) Rinse pipette several times by drawing some of the liquid into the pipette and expelling
- 3 Mix contents of tube by swirling
- 4 The other tube is the blank
- 5 Allow tubes to stand for 10 minutes
- 6 Set wavelength at 540 mμ and then place blank tube in instrument and set 100% T
- 7 Replace blank with unknown
- 8 Refer transmission reading to table to obtain concentration of sample in grams hemoglobin per 100 ml of blood

Reference

- 1 U S Armed Forces Medical Journal Vol V No 3 (93
(May 1954)

10 COLEMAN SPECTROPHOTOMETER PROCEDURE (Courtesy Coleman Instruments)

Hemoglobin (Cyanmethemoglobin)

Reference

Stadie W C J Biol Chem 41 237 1920

Drabkin D L and Austin J H J Biol Chem 98 719
1932 112 51 (1935)

Crosby Munn and Furth U S Armed Forces Med J 6
693 1954

Procedure

Measure exactly 5.0 ml of Drabkin's Reagent
(for preparation see Appendix) into a test
tube

Mix the blood sample thoroughly and transfer
exactly 0.02 ml (Sahlb pipette) into the
reagent

Rinse the pipette three times with the reagent
in the test tube

Allow the tube to stand for 10 minutes

Transfer a portion of the contents of the tube
to a 12 X 75 mm cuvette and read in the
Spectrophotometer at 540 m μ using a cu-
vette of Drabkin's Reagent as a reference
blank

Read the hemoglobin value in gram per cent
from the table

9 PHOTOVOLT LUMETRON PROCEDURE (Courtesy Photovolt Corp)

Hemoglobin (acid Hematin)

Measure exactly 0.02 ml blood in a pipette
(to continue) Wipe off outside of pipette

Blow the blood into exactly 10 ml of 0.1
N HCl in a colorimeter tube

Rinse the pipette by sucking up the solution
and blowing it out

Stopper and mix

Read per cent transmission in LUMETRON
after 3 minutes using green filter 530
against water as the blank set at 100%
transmission

With the transmission value is obtained
find result directly from Calibration Card
which indicates per cent of normal opposite
the transmission reading

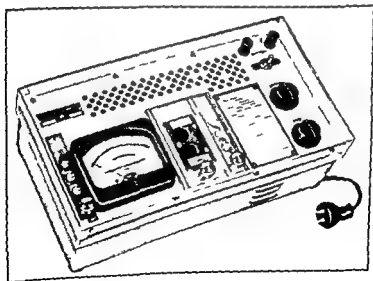


FIG. 29 - Photovolt Lumetron

DIFFERENTIAL WHITE CELL COUNT

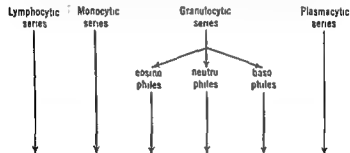
Information Significant to the Student

The differential white cell count is a determination of the different white cells in a patient's blood. The report often plays a large part in the diagnosis of disease. A brief discussion follows.

We classify men as to race. Thus we have the white race, yellow race, and black race. In a similar manner we classify the white cells as to series. Thus we have the lymphocytic series, monocytic series, granulocytic series, and plasmacytic series.

The white race may be divided into Americans, Europeans, and Asiatics. In a similar vein the granulocytic series may be divided into eosinophiles, neutrophiles, and basophiles.

We may therefore picture 4 series of white cells, with one series being divided into 3 branches. Thus



The people of each race start out as infants and go through various stages of development which we designate as child, juvenile, and adult. In a similar manner the cells of each series start out as infants and go through various stages of development. And just as we frequently take pictures of people at various stages of life, we can make drawings of cells at various stages of development. This has been done in Plate II where the young cells start out at the top of the

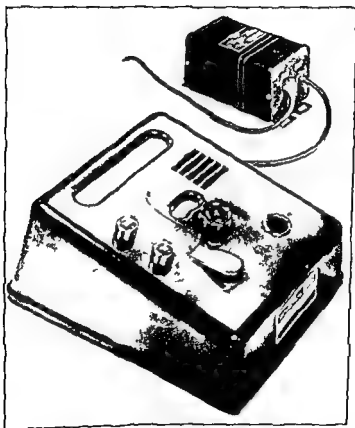
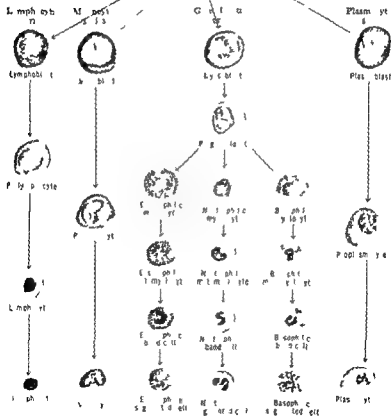


FIG. 30 — Coleman Spectrophotometer

PLATE II

CELL FORMING TISSUES

(Bone marrow liver and spleen)



page and increase in maturity as they move to the bottom of the page.

The cells in the vast upper portion of the chart are the very young cells. These are usually confined to their birth place in the bone marrow, liver and spleen. After 5-days development they are eager to battle the diseases of the body. Therefore they pass into the blood stream and serve as sentinels of sanitation, cruising through the body in constant search of combat.

In a single drop of normal blood there are thousands of white cells. In this same drop however there are only six different white cells. And the student who is about to study these cells should pause to become acquainted with their names and characteristics. Their names are given below and their characteristics are illustrated in Plate II.

Monocytes

Lymphocytes

Eosinophilic segmented cells

Basophilic segmented cells

Neutrophilic segmented cells

Neutrophilic band cells

The above cells are not present in equal numbers. For example there are more lymphocytes than monocytes. When we count 100 white cells and report the number of each type present we perform a differential white cell count.

Since we count 100 white cells the values for the differential white cell count are given in per cent. For example if we find 30 monocytes and 70 lymphocytes in 100 white cells we report 30 per cent monocytes and 70 per cent lymphocytes. The normal values for the differential white cell count are given in Table 6.

In disease the percentages may vary. For example the normal values for lymphocytes are 20 to 35 per cent. But in lymphocytic leukemia we may find 95 per cent lymphocytes, 5 per cent neutrophilic segmented cells and none of the other cells. The increased cell percentage which is found in the more common diseases is given in Table 7.

It is apparent that the differential white cell count is a useful diagnostic aid and the physician may use it to confirm or refute a questionable diagnosis. To illustrate the physician may have the following problem: Does the patient have a simple stomachache or appendicitis? If the differential

Table 6 —Normal Values for a Differential White Cell Count

Cell	Per Cent Found
Baophilic segmented cells	0 to 1
Eosinophilic segmented cells	1 to 3
Neutrophilic band cells	2 to 6
Monocytes	2 to 6
Lymphocytes	20 to 35
Neutrophilic segmented cells	55 to 75

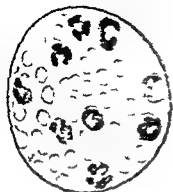
Table 7 —Increased Cell Percentages Found in the More Common Diseases

Increased Per Cent of Lymphocytes	Increased Per Cent of Monocytes	Increased Per Cent of Eosinophilic Cells	Increased Per Cent of Neutrophilic Cells
Mumps	Typhus	Asthma	Appendicitis
Whooping cough	Brucellosis	Hay fever	Pneumonia
Infectious mononucleosis	Tuberculosis	Scarlet fever	Tonsillitis
Lymphocytic leukemia	Monocytic leukemia	Parasitic infestations	Meningitis
			Diphtheria
			Granulocytic leukemia

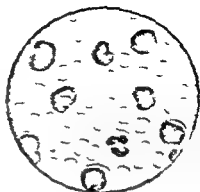
white cell count is normal the physician rules out appendicitis. On the other hand if the differential white cell count shows about 85 per cent neutrophilic segmented cells and 15 per cent neutrophilic band cells the physician may operate.

The suffix *-osis* on the end of a word means *an increase in*. Thus when the percentage of lymphocytes is increased the

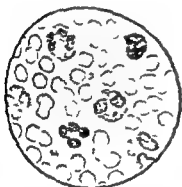
PLATE III



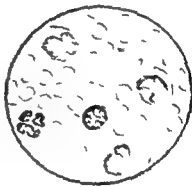
Various types of Leukocytes



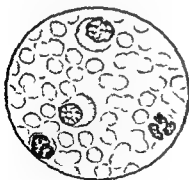
Leukocytes



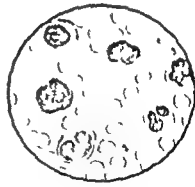
Eosinophilic Leukocytes



Monocytes



Highly Colored



Infectious Mononucleosis

VARIOUS TYPES OF LEUKOCYTES

(From Medical Statistics, 1st Edition, J. C. Clark, 1914, Holt, Rinehart & Co.)

Published by

condition is referred to as a lymphocytosis. By a similar token we have a monocytosis, eosinophilic leukocytosis and neutrophilic leukocytosis.*

The cells which the technician may expect to find in the various types of leukocytosis are illustrated in Plate III. The numerous small pink objects surrounding the white cells are red cells. The cells in all the illustrations have been stained and magnified 1000 times.

There are two parts to each white cell. The central portion known as the nucleus and the portion surrounding the nucleus which is known as the cytoplasm. And just as people are largely identified by the characteristics of their face and body, the white cells are largely identified by the characteristics of their nucleus and cytoplasm. Before turning to the procedure for the differential white cell count, the student should carefully study the cells in Plate III and note the following:

The illustration labelled *Lymphocytosis* contains 1 neutrophilic segmented cell and 8 lymphocytes. Note that there are both small and large lymphocytes.

The illustration labelled *Monocytosis* contains 1 neutrophilic segmented cell, 1 lymphocyte and 3 monocytes. Note that the monocytes are the largest cells and also that they have a sprawling nucleus.

The illustration labelled *Neutrophilic Leukocytosis* contains 3 neutrophilic band cells and 4 neutrophilic segmented cells. Note that the nucleus of the band cell is shaped like a band. On the other hand, the nucleus of the segmented cell is broken up into segments. These segments are separated by a fine filament. The unbroken or non-filamented band in the neutrophilic band cell is the only characteristic which distinguishes it from the neutrophilic segmented cell.

The illustration labelled *Eosinophilic Leukocytosis* contains 1 neutrophilic segmented cell, 1 lymphocyte, 5 eosinophilic segmented cells and 1 ruptured eosinophilic segmented cell. The identifying characteristic of the eosinophiles is the coarse red granulation in the cytoplasm.

An interpretation of the *w r l* which are used in hematology is given in the Appendix on page 211.

The illustration labelled *Infectious Mononucleosis* shows the abnormal lymphocytes seen in this particular disease. Note the moth-eaten appearance of the cytoplasm.

The illustration labelled *Plasma Cell Reaction* shows plasma cells. These are seldom seen. They may be found in the blood however in measles, chicken pox, multiple myeloma, plasmacytic leukemia and serum sickness.

Procedure for the Differential White Cell Count

It is strongly urged that the student first read this entire procedure through and then make a differential white cell count by following the summary on page 90.

The blood for the differential white cell count is obtained from a finger puncture or venipuncture. The steps in the procedure are outlined below and a detailed explanation of each step follows.

- 1 Making the blood smear
- 2 Staining the cells
- 3 Identifying the cells
- 4 Classifying the cells

1 Making the Blood Smear

There are two methods of making a blood smear: slide method and coverglass method. The slide method is illustrated in Figure 31 and the coverglass method is illustrated in Figure 32.

The slide method is the simplest and consequently has become the most popular. In this method the criteria for a well made smear is as follows:

- a The blood must *not* cover the entire portion of the slide
- b There should be a thick portion and a thin portion
- c The thick portion should make a gradual transition to the thin portion (Fig. 33)

The illustration labelled *Infectious Mononucleosis* shows the abnormal lymphocytes seen in this particular disease. Note the moth-eaten appearance of the cytoplasm.

The illustration labelled *Plasma Cell Reaction* shows plasma cells. These are seldom seen. They may be found in the blood however in measles, chicken pox, multiple myeloma, plasmacytic leukemia, and serum sickness.

Procedure for the Differential White Cell Count

It is strongly urged that the student first read this entire procedure through and then make a differential white cell count by following the summary on page 90.

The blood for the differential white cell count is obtained from a finger puncture or venipuncture. The steps in the procedure are outlined below and a detailed explanation of each step follows.

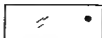
- 1 Making the blood smear
- 2 Staining the cells
- 3 Identifying the cells
- 4 Classifying the cells

1 Making the Blood Smear

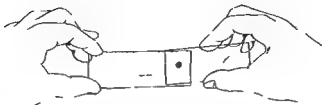
There are two methods of making a blood smear: slide method and coverglass method. The slide method is illustrated in Figure 31 and the coverglass method is illustrated in Figure 32.

The slide method is the simplest and consequently has become the most popular. In this method the criteria for a well made smear is as follows:

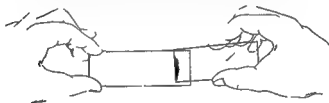
- a The blood must *not* cover the entire portion of the slide
- b There should be a thick portion and a thin portion
- c The thick portion should make a gradual transition to the thin portion (Fig. 33)



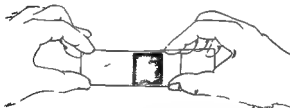
1 Place the slide on a table or flat surface Place a *small* drop of blood on the slide



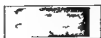
■ Using another slide as a spreader place one edge of the spreader on the slide at about a 30 degree angle (this means that the other edge of the spreader will be about an inch above the table) Now draw spreader toward the drop



3 Contact the drop of blood



4 With a rapid smooth gliding motion push the spreader over the slide in the direction of the arrow



5 Completed blood slide

FIG 31 —Slide method of making a blood smear

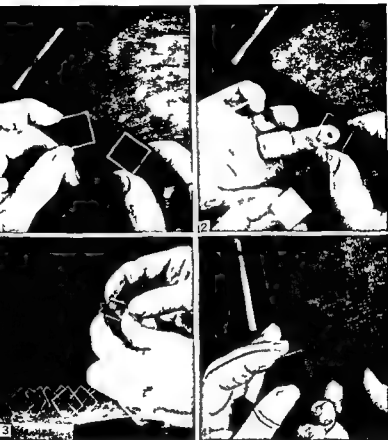
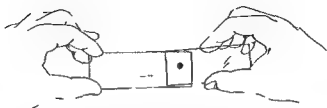


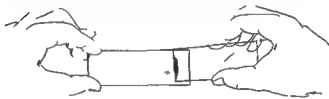
FIG. 32 — Cover glass method of making a blood smear. 1. A cover glass ($\frac{1}{8}$ inch No. 2) held at the adjacent corners with the thumb and forefinger of each hand. 2. The drop of blood touched with the cover glass held in the right hand. 3. The cover glass carrying the drop of blood is quickly placed parallel on the cover glass held in the left hand. 4. After the blood has spread by capillary attraction the cover glasses are drawn apart with a steady motion care being taken to keep them parallel. After drying in the air the films are ready for staining. The drop of blood must be globoid and just large enough to cover the cover glass when properly spread. (Haden Clinical Laboratory Methods courtesy of C. V. Mosby Company.)



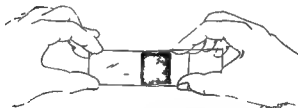
1 Place the slide on a table or flat surface Place a *small* drop of blood on the slide



2 Using another slide as a spreader place one edge of the spreader on the slide at about a 30 degree angle (this means that the other edge of the spreader will be about an inch above the table) Now draw spreader toward the drop



3 Contact the drop of blood



4 With a rapid smooth gliding motion push the spreader over the slide in the direction of the arrows



5 Completed blood slide

FIG. 31 —Shake method of making a blood smear

The white cells are largely identified by their preference for the above dyes. And in some cases the cells are even named for the dye which they prefer. For example cells which prefer the acid dye (eosin) are called eosinophiles—meaning love of eosin. Whereas cells which prefer the basic dye are called basophiles. And cells which prefer a mixture of the acid and basic dye are called neutrophiles.

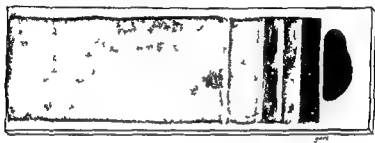
In the staining process a buffer solution is used to control the acid base balance of the stain. This is a most important function. If the buffer solution is too acid it makes the acid dye too bright and the basic dye too faint. On the other hand if the buffer solution is too basic it makes the basic dye too bright and the acid dye too faint. In either case the result is a poorly stained slide.

The acid base balance of a solution is measured by the pH value. And a buffer solution should have a pH value between 6.4 and 6.8. This allows the best color contrast between the acid dye and basic dye. The directions for preparing the buffer solution and Wright's stain are given in the Appendix.

The procedure for staining a blood slide is given below.

- 1 Place the slide on the rack of a staining dish.
- 2 Add 25 to 40 drops of Wright's stain. This should cover the entire slide.
- 3 Let stand 1 minute.
- 4 Add about 20 drops of buffer solution so that it is evenly distributed over the slide (Fig. 34).
- 5 Mix the two solutions by blowing gently on several portions of the slide (Fig. 34). When the solutions are well mixed a silvery scum usually floats on top of the solution.
- 6 Allow to set for 4 to 8 minutes. The time varies because each batch of Wright's stain has a different staining time.
- 7 Remove the excess staining solution from the slide by flooding freely with distilled water.

After the blood smear is made it should be allowed to dry. This takes a few minutes. The patient's name should then be written on the smear with an ordinary pen or pencil (Fig 31 and Fig 33). This of course is done for the purpose of identification. And it should never be neglected for blood smears could easily get mixed up and cause an incorrect diagnosis.



POOR SMEAR

Thick area for coating



GOOD SMEAR

FIG 33 — Good and poor blood smears

2 Staining the Cells

The cells are stained with one of the following stains: Wright's, Giemsa, or Wilson. Of these stains the most popular is Wright's.

Wright's stain is a methyl alcohol solution of an acid dye and a basic dye. The acid dye is known as eosin; it is red in color. The basic dye is known as methylene blue; it is blue in color.

Table 8 —Recommended Nomenclature for the White Cells

The essential characteristics which distinguish each stage of development from the preceding and following ones are given in italics above and below the arbitrary lines of demarcation (Courtesy of the American Medical Association)

<i>Lymphocytic Series</i>	<i>Monocytic Series</i>	<i>Granulocytic Series</i>	<i>Plasmacytic Series</i>
Lymphoblast	Monoblast	Myeloblast	Plasmoblast
<i>Fine chromatin structure</i>	<i>Fine chromatin structure</i>	<i>Fine chromatin structure</i>	<i>Fine chromatin structure</i>
Chromatin clump	<i>Irregularly shaped nucleus</i>	<i>Chromatin clump</i>	<i>Chromatin clump</i>
Prolymphocyte	Promonocyte	Progranulocyte	Proplasmacyte
<i>Large cell with finer chromatin</i>	<i>Nucleolus present</i>	<i>No specific granules</i>	<i>Nucleolus present</i>
<i>Coarse chromatin structure</i>	<i>Nucleolus absent</i>	<i>Specific granules</i>	<i>Nucleolus absent</i>
Lymphocyte	Monocyte	Myelocyte	Plasmacyte
		<i>Round or oval nucleus</i>	
		<i>Indented nucleus</i>	
		Metamyelocyte	
		<i>Bean or kidney shaped nucleus</i>	
		<i>Part of nucleus with peripheral indented</i>	
		Band cell	
		<i>No filament present</i>	
		<i>Nucleus lobes connected by filaments</i>	
		Segmented cell	

- 8 Remove from rack wipe bottom of slide
stain on end and allow to dry
- 9 NOTE If the stain has been left on too long
and the cells are over stained the stain may
be removed with 95 per cent alcohol and the
slide restained

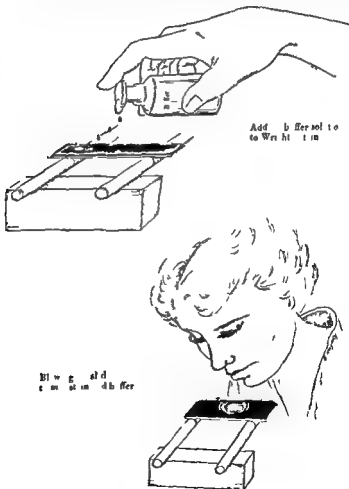


FIG 34 —Staining the blood slide

Table 9 —System of Questions for Identification of White Cells

(Modified from Naval Medical School Manual)

- I What is the size of the cell? Is it
 - a Small as a red cell (7.5 microns)
 - b Medium as a segmented cell (15 microns)
 - c Large as a monocyte? (20 microns)
- II What is the size and shape of the nucleus? Is it
 - a Large folded irregular coarse clumps and strand with no apparent nuclear membrane as in the monocyte
 - b Relatively small and round with nuclear membrane as in the lymphocyte?
 - c Relatively large and pale with fine chromatin network containing nucleoli as in the blasts and pro cells?
 - d Round and covered with granules as in the myelocyte?
 - e Slightly indented as in the metamyelocyte
 - f Horse-shoe shaped as in the band cell
 - g Lobed as in the segmented cell?
- III What is the color of the cytoplasm?
 - a Translucent pale sky blue as a lymphocyte
 - b Opaque gray blue as a monocyte
 - c Pink as a neutrophilic cell?
 - d Washed out blue or colorless as an eosinophilic cell
 - e Light blue as a basophilic cell?
 - f Deep blue as a blast cell or plasma cell
- IV Are there any granules in the cytoplasm? If so are they
 - a Fine and diffuse as in the monocyte
 - b Coarse and clumped as in the large lymphocyte and myelocyte?
 - c Lilac-colored as in the neutrophilic cell?
 - d Orange-red and coarse as in the eosinophilic cell?
 - e Purplish black coarse and irregular as in the basophilic cell
- V What is the texture of the nucleus or cytoplasm? Is it the
 - a Smooth chromatin network or finely stippled appearance of the nucleus of the blast cells
 - b Loose smooth network of the nucleus of stem cells?
 - c Dense hill and valley effect of the nucleus of mature lymphocytes granulocytes plasmacytes and nucleated red cells
 - d Filmy translucent appearance of the nucleus of monocytes?
 - e Dense texture of the cytoplasm of blast cells?
 - f Denser metallic appearance of the cytoplasm of nucleated red cells
 - g Monocytic cytoplasm resembling light blue cotton bed sheet?

3 Identifying the White Cells

It is very difficult to learn the identification of cells from a textbook. The student should have the help of an instructor. This may be supplemented by reference to Plates II and III and the recommended nomenclature given in Table 8.

As an aid in identifying each cell, the following three questions should always be kept in mind:

- a What is the size of the cell?
- b What are the characteristics of the nucleus?
- c What are the characteristics of the cytoplasm?

After the student has seen the various cells under the microscope the system of questions in Table 9 may help identify cells which seem difficult to recognize. For part 1 of this table we are indebted to Dr. R. U. Northrup.

The directions for making the differential white cell count are given below:

- 1 Place a drop of oil on the *thin* portion of the stained blood slide.
- 2 Place the slide on the stage of the microscope. Now lower the oil immersion (90 \times) objective into this drop of oil.
- 3 First check to see that the condenser is moved up as close as possible to the slide. This insures the maximum amount of light. Now adjust the mirror so that the light is centered up through the eye piece.
- 4 Using the coarse and fine adjustments bring the cells into focus.
- 5 Observe the sample differential white cell count shown in Figure 3.
- 6 By moving the slide in the path of the broken arrow shown in Figure 36 identify and record the first 100 white cells you see. Do not skip any. If there are some you are not sure of ask for help or record them as unidentified.

two the filament and non filament classification. An explanation of each method follows.

SCHILLING CLASSIFICATION

Schilling was one of the first to notice that in many diseases there is an increase in the percentage of immature neutrophils of the granulocytic series. His blood chart reported the percentages of the various cell types and—in part—was arranged in the following manner:

	Neutrophilic Myelo- cytes	Neutrophilic Metamyelo- cytes	Neutrophilic Band Cells	Neutrophilic Segmented Cells
Normal values	0%	0%	2 to 6%	55 to 75%

Note that the immature cells are on the left side of the chart. If the percentage of these immature cells became increased Schilling called it a *shift to the left*.

When the shift to the left was accompanied by a low white cell count he called it a *degenerative shift to the left*. This is found in such diseases as typhoid fever. It is due to a depression of the cell factories in the bone marrow.

When the shift to the left was accompanied by a high white cell count Schilling called it a *regenerative shift to the left*. This is found in infectious diseases. It is caused by a stimulus of the cell factories in the bone marrow.

The Schilling classification of the differential white cell count has become quite popular. The cell types which are reported and the normal percentages are given in Table 10.

Table 10—Schilling Classification of the Differential White Cell Count

Cell	Per Cent
Neutrophilic myelocyte	0
Neutrophilic metamyelocytes	0
Neutrophilic band cells	2 to 6
Neutrophilic segmented cell	55 to 75
Lymphocytes	20 to 30
Monocytes	2 to 6
Eosinophilic segmented cells	1 to 3
Basophilic segmented cells	0 to 1

Cell	Count	Total Number
Neutrophilic band cells		4
Neutrophilic segmented cells	 	60
Lymphocytes	 	20
Monocyte		5
Eosinophilic segmented cell		2
Basophilic segmented cells	0	0
		100

FIG. 30.—Simple differential white cell count

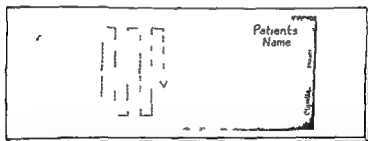


FIG. 30.—Method of examining the blood slide for the differential white cell count. When a blood slide is made the large cells tend to accumulate on the edge of the slide whereas the small cells tend to stay in the middle of the slide. It is apparent that if the cells are counted only on the edge or in the middle of the slide it would not be a true representative sample of the patient's cells. The slide is therefore examined by following the path of the broken arrow shown above. This is accomplished by moving the slide with the movable stage.

4. Classifying the White Cells

When 100 white cells have been identified and recorded the report of the differential white cell count is given according to either of the following—one the Schilling classification

- 1 Make a blood smear
 - a Place a small drop of blood on a glass slide
 - b Using another slide as a spreader spread the drop over the slide
 - c Allow to dry
 - d Write the patient's name on the slide
- 2 Stain the cells
 - a Place slide on rack
 - b Add 25 to 40 drops of Wright's stain
 - c Let stand 1 minute
 - d Add about 20 drops of buffer solution
 - e Mix by blowing on slide
 - f Let stand 4 to 8 minutes
 - g Wash and allow to dry
- 3 Identify the white cells
 - a Place slide on stage of microscope
 - b Using the oil immersion objective identify and record 100 white cells
- 4 Classify cells according to Schilling classification
 - a Report the number or percentage of each cell present

EXAMINATION OF THE STAINED RED CELLS

Information Significant to the Student

Examination of the stained red cells consists of inspecting the red cells of the blood slide for variations in size shape hemoglobin content and abnormal inclusions. In many diseases particularly the anemias these variations are quite marked and become significant to the physician during diagnosis and treatment.

In pernicious anemia for example the red cells are very large. In the anemia of pregnancy the red cells are pale. And in sickle cell anemia they are shaped like a sickle or crescent.

The descriptive terms for abnormal red cells are given in Table 12.

FILAMENT AND NON FILAMENT CLASSIFICATION

This classification reports the percentage of each cell with the exception of the neutrophils of the granulocytic series. This of course is the only manner in which it differs from the Schilling classification. The neutrophils of the granulocytic series are reported as follows:

The mature neutrophils of the granulocytic series are the neutrophilic segmented cells. These make up the filament count.

The immature neutrophils of the granulocytic series are the neutrophilic myelocytes, metamyelocytes, and band cells. These are grouped together and their total percentage make up the non filament count. For example in appendicitis we might find 11 neutrophilic myelocytes, 2 neutrophilic metamyelocytes, and 8 neutrophilic band cells. This would make a non filament count of 10 per cent.

The cells reported and the normal values for the filament and non filament classification are given in Table 11.

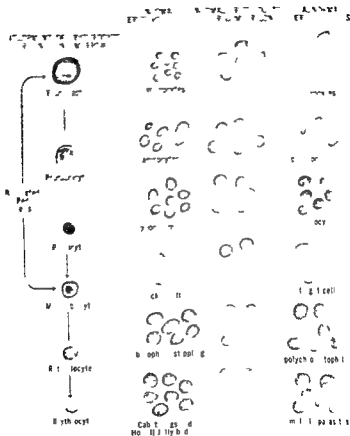
Table 11—Filament and Non Filament Classification of the Differential White Cell Count

Cell		Per Cent
Neutrophilic myelocytes	} Non filamented cells	2 to 6
Neutrophilic metamyelocytes		
Neutrophilic band cells		
Neutrophilic segmented cells		55 to 75
Lymphocytes		20 to 35
Monocytes		2 to 6
Eosinophilic segmented cells		1 to 3
Basophilic segmented cells		0 to 1

Summary of the Differential White Cell Count

After reading the foregoing discussion perform a differential white cell count by following the steps in the summary below. If you have trouble with any of the steps simply refer back to the detailed discussion.

PLATE IV



NORMAL AND ABNORMAL RED CELL

Table 12—Descriptive Terms for the Red Cells

<i>Descriptive Word</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Where Found</i>
Microcyte	Small cell	Microcytic anemias
Normocyte	Normal cell	Normal blood
Macrocyte	Large cell	Pernicious anemia
Anisocytosis	Variation in size of cells	Many types of anemia
Poikilocytosis	Variation in shape of cells	Many types of anemia
Hypochromia	Deficient in hemoglobin	Hypochromic anemias
Normochromic	Normal in hemoglobin	Normal blood
Polychromatophilia	Variation in color of cells	Many types of anemia
Sickle cell	Shaped like a sickle or crescent	Sickle cell anemia
Spherocyte	Small round cell well packed with hemoglobin	Congenital hemolytic anemia
Target cell	Deficient in hemoglobin with a bull's eye in center of cell	Some cases of obstructive jaundice
Howell Jolly bodies	Nuclear remnants shaped like dots	Severe anemias
Cabot rings	Nuclear remnants shaped like a ring	Severe anemias
Basophilic stippling	Coarse dark violet granulation	Lead poisoning

These abnormal red cells and the stages in the development of a red cell are illustrated in Plate IV

Procedure for the Examination of the Stained Red Cells

Choose a thin portion of the same blood slide which was used for the differential white cell count and examine the red cells for any variation in size shape hemoglobin content and other abnormalities such as malaria parasites

Report all abnormalities and qualify your descriptive terms with the adjectives slight moderate or marked A sample report found in an anemia is given below

Red cells show a marked degree of hypochromia a moderate degree of anisocytosis and a slight degree of poikilocytosis

Chapter 3

Further Examinations of the Red Cells

IN THE complete blood count the red cells are counted and the blood slide is inspected for any red cell abnormalities. This information, however, is not sufficient for the diagnosis and treatment of many types of anemia and further examinations of the red cells are required. For example, the red cells are more fragile in hemolytic jaundice than in obstructive jaundice and the red cell fragility test becomes a considerable aid in the differential diagnosis of these two diseases. The demonstration of sickle shaped red cells is usually sufficient evidence for a diagnosis of sickle cell anemia. In several other anemias the physician is interested in the body's ability to produce red cells. A reticulocyte count furnishes this information.

This chapter presents those supplementary examinations which aid the physician in the diagnosis and treatment of the anemias. Although the sedimentation rate is not useful in this connection it is included in this chapter since it is an examination of the red cells. The tests will be considered in the following order:

- Sedimentation rate
- Hematocrit reading
- Sickle cell examination
- Fragility test
- Reticulocyte count
- Red cell indices

SEDIMENTATION RATE OF RED CELLS

Information Significant to the Student

When the red cells are allowed to settle out from their plasma the speed of their fall is known as the sedimentation

- 3 Shake the test tube gently to obtain an even distribution of cells in the plasma fill the Westergren tube to the zero mark and place in the Westergren rack (Fig 37) Failure to mix the blood before filling the Westergren tube may cause a considerable error because

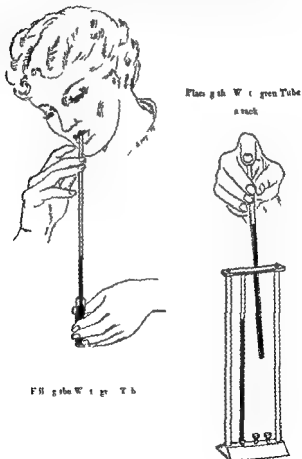


FIG 37 —Filling the Westergren tube and placing it in a rack

rate. Although it is not specific for any particular disease the sedimentation rate is considered a useful diagnostic aid. It is increased in acute infectious rheumatic fever, tuberculosis, pregnancy, nephritis, and cancer.

The normal values for the various methods of determination given in millimeters per hour are listed in the table below. Note that the Cutler method has lower normal values than the other two methods. Therefore when reporting the sedimentation rate the technician should always specify the method of determination and the normal values.

Table 13 — Normal Values for the Sedimentation Rate

	Westergren	Cutler	Wintrobe Landsberg
Men	0-9 mm	0-8 mm	0-9 mm
Women	0-20 mm	0-10 mm	0-20 mm

Procedures for the Sedimentation Rate

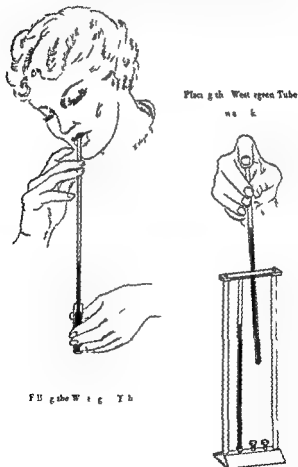
The sedimentation rate is determined by filling a graduated tube with oxalated or citrated blood and recording the rate at which the red cells settle out from their plasma. The Westergren, Cutler, and Wintrobe-Landsberg methods are widely used. The procedures follow.

In performing this test the sedimentation rate tube should always be placed in an exact vertical position. Deviations from this position will greatly increase the sedimentation rate.

Westergren Method

1. Get materials for a venipuncture. In a test tube place 0.5 cc of 3.8 per cent sodium citrate (preparation given in the Appendix on page 242).
2. Make a venipuncture. Add 4.5 cc of blood to the test tube and mix by inverting the tube several times. (In order to measure exactly 4.5 cc some technicians withdraw about 5 cc of blood, remove the needle, hold several gauze pads over the neck of the syringe and force blood out until it reaches the 4.5 mark.)

- 3) Shake the test tube gently to obtain an even distribution of cells in the plasma fill the Westergren tube to the zero mark and place in the Westergren rack (Fig 37) Failure to mix the blood before filling the Westergren tube may cause a considerable error because



the cells have already begun to settle out from their plasma

- 4 In exactly 1 hour, record the number of millimeters that the cells have fallen

Normal values

Men — 0-9 mm in 1 hour

Women — 0-20 mm in 1 hour

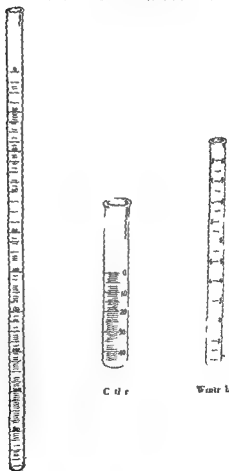


Fig. 38

FIG. 38 — Sedimentation rate tube

Cutler Method

- 1 Draw 0.5 cc of a sterile 3.8 per cent sodium citrate solution (preparation given in Appendix on page 242) into a sterile 5 cc syringe
- 2 With the same syringe make a venipuncture and withdraw 4.5 cc of blood. Mix the anticoagulant and blood by inverting the syringe several times
- 3 Fill a Cutler tube (Fig. 38) to the zero mark
- 4 Make readings every 10 mm for a period of 1 hour
- 5 Plot the readings on a Cutler sedimentation rate graph (Fig. 39)

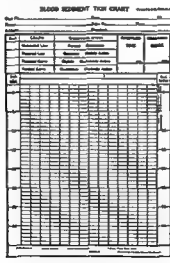


Fig. 39—Cutler sedimentation rate graph

Normal Values

Men — 0-8 mm in 1 hour

Women — 0-10 mm in 1 hour

Wintrobe Landsberg Method

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture and an oxalated test tube (preparation given in Appendix on page 241)

Fill the Wintrobe test

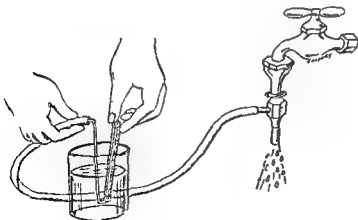
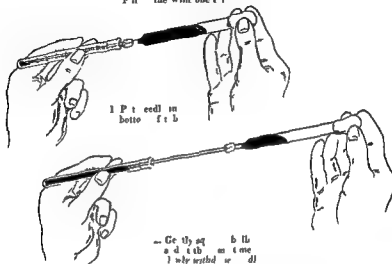


Fig. 40 - Filling and cleaning a Wintrobe tube

FIG 40 - Filling and cleaning a Wintrobe tube

- 2 Make a venipuncture withdraw 3 cc of blood and place in the ovalated test tube. Cover the mouth of the test tube and invert several times to dissolve the ovalate.
- 3 Shake the test tube gently to obtain an even distribution of cells in the plasma. Failure to mix the blood before filling the Wintrobe tube may cause a considerable error because the red cells have already begun to settle out from their plasma.
- 4 Using either a capillary tube or needle and syringe fill the Wintrobe tube to the zero mark (Fig. 40).
- 5 Place the tube in a Wintrobe rack so that the tube is *exactly* vertical.
- 6 In exactly 1 hour read the number of millimeters that the cells have fallen. The sedimentation rate scale starts with a 0 and read downward. It has a total range of 10 cm or 100 mm. The other scale on the tube is for the hematocrit reading.

Normal Values

Men — 0-9 mm in 1 hour

Women — 0-20 mm in 1 hour

In anemias it may be necessary to make a correction for the decreased number of red cells. The procedure for the correction follows.

Procedure for Correcting the Sedimentation Rate

After the reading of the sedimentation rate has been made centrifuge the tube until the cells are so completely packed that further centrifuging does not lower their volume. If centrifuged at 3 000 revolutions per minute this usually takes about 30 minutes. The scale on the right side of the Wintrobe tube is 10 cm or 100 mm in length. Using this scale and reading *upward* from the bottom of the tube take

the reading in millimeters of packed red cells. With the aid of the chart in Figure 41 make the correction as follows:

Place your pencil on the horizontal line corresponding to your reading of the sedimentation rate. Move to the right until you strike the vertical line corresponding to your read-

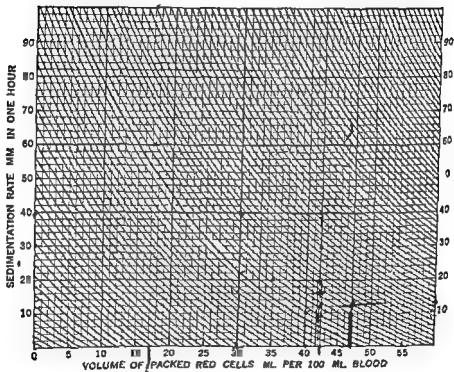


FIG. 41 — Wintrobe-Landsberg chart for correction of the sedimentation rate. (Wintrobe and Landsberg, *Am J Med Sci*.)

ing of the packed red cells. Now place your pencil on the curved line nearest this point. If the patient is a woman follow this curved line downward until you strike the vertical line 42. The value of the horizontal line at this point is the corrected sedimentation rate. If the patient is a man follow

the curved line downward until you strike the vertical line 47. The value of the horizontal line at this point is the corrected sedimentation rate.

To illustrate if you have the following data:

Patient	woman
Reading of the sedimentation rate	<u>40 mm.</u>
Reading of the packed red cells	30 mm

The corrected sedimentation rate is found as follows. Place your pencil on the horizontal line 40 (reading of sedimentation rate). Move to the right until you strike the vertical line 30 (reading of packed red cells). Follow the nearest curved line downward until you strike the vertical line 42 (end point for women). The value of the horizontal line at this point is 18. This is the corrected sedimentation rate. If the patient were a man you would have followed the curved line downward until you struck the vertical line 47 (end point for men). The value of the horizontal line at this point is 12. This would be the corrected sedimentation rate for men.

Make the report as follows:

Uncorrected sedimentation rate	40 mm
Reading of packed red cells	30 mm
Corrected sedimentation rate	18 mm
Method of Wintrobe	

HEMATOCRIT READING

Information Significant to the Student

When blood is centrifuged the per cent occupied by the packed red cells is known as the hematocrit reading. For example if 10 cc. of blood are centrifuged and the packed red cells occupy 5 cc. the hematocrit reading is 50 per cent.

The average man has a hematocrit reading of 45 per cent and the average woman has a hematocrit reading of 42 per cent. The hematocrit reading is low whenever the red cell

count of hemoglobin is low. Consequently, the hematocrit reading is low in all types of anemia.

A high hematocrit reading may be found in dehydration conditions. In such cases fluid has been lost and the blood contains more cells than plasma. Some of the above mentioned readings are illustrated in Figure 42 and the normal hematocrit values are given in Table 14.

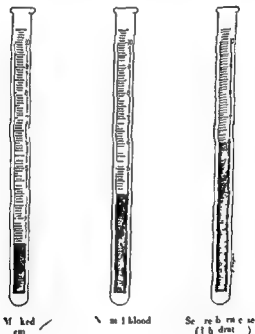


FIG 42 —Low normal and high hematocrit reading. The lower darker portion of each tube is red cells; the upper lighter portion is plasma.

Table 14 —Normal Values for the Hematocrit Reading

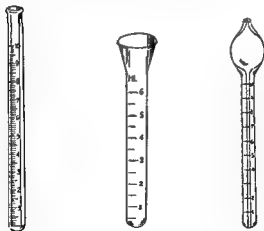
	Normal Value	Average Normal Value
Men	40-50%	45%
Women	37-47%	42%

Procedures for the Hematocrit Reading

The hematocrit reading is made by centrifuging a sample of blood and calculating the per cent occupied by the packed red cells. The white cells and platelets form a very fine white layer on top of the packed red cells but their volume is so small that it does not interfere in the reading. The Wintrobe, Sanford Magath and Van Allen methods are used to make the determination. The procedures follow:

Wintrobe Method

1. Get materials for a venipuncture and an oxalated test tube (preparation given in Appendix on page 241)
2. Make a venipuncture, withdraw 5 cc of blood and transfer it to the oxalated tube. Cover the mouth of the tube and invert several times to dissolve the oxalate.



Wintrobe

Sanford Magath

Van Allen

FIG. 43 —Hematocrit tubes

- 3 Shake the tube gently to get an even distribution of cells in the plasma. (Failure to do this may cause a considerable error) Using either a capillary tube or needle and syringe fill the Wintrobe tube (Fig. 43) to the 10 cm mark.
- 4 Centrifuge at 3 000 revolutions per minute for 30 minutes—or centrifuge at high speed until two successive spinings give the same reading. (This simply indicates that the cells have been well packed.)
- 5 Calculation. Use the scale on the right side of the tube. It is 10 cm in length and starts at the bottom of the tube and reads up. Read the number of cm corresponding to the level of packed red cells and calculate the per cent. For example, if the reading is 4.2 cm, the hematocrit reading is found as follows:

$$\frac{4.2 \text{ cm (packed cells)}}{10.0 \text{ cm (blood)}} \times 100 = 42\%$$

Normal Values

Men	40–50% /
Women	37–47%

Sanford Magath Method

- 1 Place exactly 1 cc of a 1.1% solution of sodium oxalate (preparation given in Appendix on page 242) in a Sanford Magath tube (Fig. 43). Get materials for a venipuncture.
- 2 Make a venipuncture, withdraw about 8 cc of blood, and fill the Sanford Magath tube exactly to the 6 cc mark. Mix by inverting the tube several times.
- 3 Centrifuge at 3 000 revolutions per minute for 30 minutes—or centrifuge at high speed until two successive spinings give the same reading.

- 4 Read the level of packed red cells and calculate the percentage. For example if the reading is 2.2 cc the hematocrit reading is found as follows:

$$\frac{2.2 \text{ cc (packed cells)}}{5.0 \text{ cc (blood)}} \times 100 = 44\%$$

Normal Values

Men	40-50%
Women	37-47%

Van Allen Method

- 1 Get a Van Allen tube (Fig. 43) and a bottle of 1.3% sodium oxalate solution (preparation given in Appendix on page 242).
- 2 Make a rather deep finger puncture; discard the first drop and draw blood exactly to the 10 mark of the Van Allen tube. Immediately draw the sodium oxalate solution into the tube until the bulb is about half full of the mixture of blood and sodium oxalate. Using either the clip that comes with the tube or a broad rubber band close the ends of the tube.
- 3 Centrifuge at 3,000 revolutions per minute for 20 minutes—or centrifuge at high speed until two successive spinnings give the same reading.
- 4 Calculations. The scale is 100 units. Starting at the bottom of the tube and reading up, note the number of units occupied by the packed red cells. Calculate the percentage. For example if the packed red cells occupy 40 units the hematocrit reading is found as follows:

$$\frac{40 \text{ units (packed red cells)}}{100 \text{ units (blood)}} \times 100 = 40\%$$

- 3 Shake the tube gently to get an even distribution of cell in the plasma (Failure to do this may cause a considerable error) Using either a capillary tube or needle and syringe fill the Wintrobe tube (Fig. 43) to the 10 cm mark.
- 4 Centrifuge at 3000 revolutions per minute for 30 minutes—or centrifuge at high speed until two successive spinings give the same reading (This simply indicates that the cells have been well packed.)
- 5 Calculation Use the scale on the right side of the tube. It is 10 cm in length and starts at the bottom of the tube and reads up. Read the number of cm corresponding to the level of packed red cell and calculate the per cent. For example if the reading is 4.2 cm the hematocrit reading is found as follows:

$$\frac{4.2 \text{ cm (packed cell)}}{10.0 \text{ cm (blood)}} \times 100 = 42\%$$

Normal Values

Men	40-50% /
Women	37-47%

Sanford Magath Method

- 1 Place exactly 1 cc of a 1.1% solution of sodium oxalate (preparation given in Appendix on page 242) in a Sanford Magath tube (Fig. 45). Get material for a venipuncture.
- 2 Make a venipuncture withdraw about 8 cc of blood and fill the Sanford Magath tube exactly to the 6 cc mark. Mix by inverting the tube several times.
- 3 Centrifuge at 3000 revolution per minute for 30 minutes—or centrifuge at high speed until two successive spinings give the same reading.

Procedures for the Sickie Cell Examination

If the oxygen is removed from the red cells of a healthy person the red cells do not lose their normal shape. However if the oxygen is removed from the red cells of a person with sickle cell anemia the red cells become sickle shaped. This is the principle of the sickle cell examination. The sickling is apparently caused by some mechanical defect in the make-up of the red cells.

In the bisulfite method of Daland and Castle the oxygen is removed by a reducing agent. And in the wet preparation method of Scriber and Waugh the oxygen tension is lowered by stopping the flow of blood. The blood is then removed from the patient and sealed from the air. The two procedures follow.

Bisulfite Method (Daland and Castle)

- 1 Prepare the bisulfite reagent as follows. Using the rough balance weigh out 0.5 gram of sodium metabisulfite ($\text{Na}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_5$). Dissolve in 25 milliliters of distilled water. This reagent must be prepared fresh. (For convenience 200 milligram tablets may be purchased from Eli Lilly Co. Indianapolis, Indiana. The solution may then be made by simply dissolving 1 tablet in 10 cc of distilled water.)
- 2 Make a finger puncture and place 1 drop of blood on a glass slide.
- 3 Add 1 drop of the bisulfite reagent and mix with an applicator stick.
- 4 Place a cover glass on the preparation and gently press to spread out the cells.
- 5 Set aside for 15 minutes.
- 6 Examine with the oil immersion objective of the microscope. Sickie shaped red cells are illustrated in Figure 44.
- 7 If sickie shaped red cells are present report the test as positive. If not report the test as negative.

Normal Values

Men	40-50%
Women	37-47%

✓ **SICKLE CELL EXAMINATION****Information Significant to the Student**

The sickle cell examination is an inspection of the red cells for sickle shaped forms (Fig 44). They are present in sickle cell anemia a disease confined mainly to members of the Negro race. The disease has an active and a passive stage.

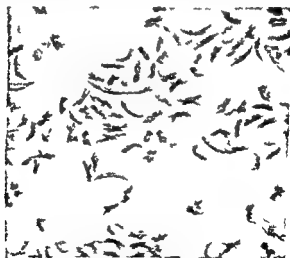


FIG 44 — Sickle shaped red cells (Wet preparation from Haden *Principles of Hematology*)

In the active stage the sickle shaped cells can be seen on a blood slide which has been stained with Wright's stain. In the passive stage however they are rarely found on a blood slide but can be readily demonstrated in special preparations.

- 3 While the rubber band is still on the finger make a finger puncture and place a drop of blood on the slide
- 4 On the fleshy portion of the palm of your hand just below the little finger rub some petroleum jelly
- 5 Rim the edges of a coverslip by scraping the petroleum jelly off your hand
- 6 Place the coverslip over the blood so that the drop is sealed under the coverslip
- 7 Using the oil immersion objective examine the preparation for sickle shaped red cells (Fig 44) If no sickling is immediately present put the slide aside and examine again at the end of 1 6 12 and 24 hours Sometimes the reaction is delayed and therefore do not report the test as negative until after the 24 hour inspection

FRAGILITY TEST

Information Significant to the Student

When blood is placed in an 0.85% salt solution the red cells neither swell nor shrink. However if the salt solution is less than 0.85% (a hypotonic solution) water enters the cells by a process known as osmosis. The cells swell and eventually rupture or hemolyze. The more fragile the cells the quicker the hemolysis. In hemolytic jaundice, the fragility of the red cells is increased whereas in obstructive jaundice, the fragility is decreased. Consequently this test is a considerable aid to the physician in the diagnosis of these two diseases.

Procedures for the Fragility Test

The fragility of the red cells is determined by placing them in a graded series of hypotonic salt solutions and noting the extent of hemolysis after a period of two hours. Either Sanford's method or a modified Sanford method may be used.

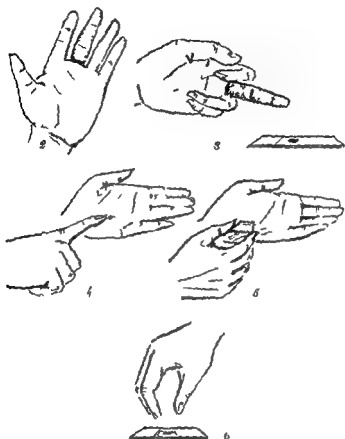


FIG. 45 - Wet preparation method for sickle cell examination

Wet Preparation Method (Scriver and Waugh)

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture - a few cover-slips, a glass slide, a rubber band, and some petroleum jelly
- 2 Place the rubber band around the patient's finger in such a tight manner that it will stop the circulation. Leave it there for about 5 minutes

tion in any test tube may be obtained by multiplying the test tube number by 0.02. For example test tube number 25 has a salt solution of $25 \times 0.02 = 0.50\%$

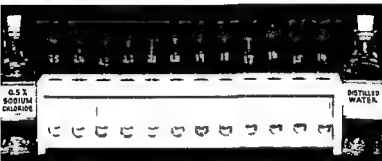


FIG. 46—Set up for a fragility test (Giffen and Sanford)

Number on test tube	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
Number drops 0.5% NaCl	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
Number drops dist. water	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
% salt sol obtained	50	48	46	44	42	40	38	36	34	32	30	28

- 4 Take the patient's rack and materials for a venipuncture to the patient. Make a venipuncture and withdraw a few cc of blood. Leave the needle on the syringe and add one drop of blood to each tube. Mix.
- 5 In order to get blood for the control rack, make a venipuncture on a normal person and withdraw a few cc of blood. Leave the needle on the syringe and add one drop to each tube of the control rack. Mix.

to make the determination. Both procedures are equally satisfactory. The modified Sanford method simply uses larger quantities and thus sharpens the readings. The procedures are given below.

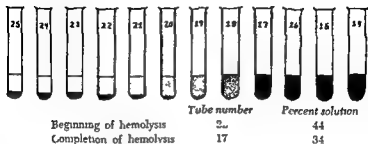
There are various modifications to the following tests. In addition to the series of salt concentrations given in the procedure, higher concentrations of salt may be used. It is also possible, although not necessary, to make the final readings in a colorimeter.

If increased fragility is suspected, some laboratories run a simple screening test before setting up the fragility test. The screening test consists of adding a few drops of the patient's blood to 5 cc of 0.5% sodium chloride. This is gently mixed and centrifuged. If the supernatant fluid is colorless, increased fragility is ruled out. However, if the supernatant fluid shows a faint pink tinge, increased fragility is indicated and further quantitative tests are run.

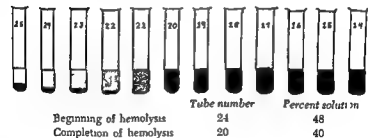
Sanford Method

- 1 Dry some chemically pure sodium chloride in an oven and make an accurate 0.5% solution as follows. Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.50 grams of the salt. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.
- 2 Get 2 test tube racks. Label one *Control* and the other *Patient*. Place 12 small test tubes in each rack and label the tubes in each rack as follows: 25, 24, 23, 22, 21, 20, 19, 18, 17, 16, 15 and 14. (See Fig. 46.)
- 3 Using the chart below, add to the test tubes of each rack the number of drops of 0.5% sodium chloride and distilled water indicated. Thus the test tubes labeled 25 get 25 drops of the 0.5% sodium chloride solution and 0.0 drops of distilled water. The per cent salt solution obtained by this dilution process is given in the bottom row of the chart. Note that the per cent salt solu-

NORMAL BLOOD



HEMOLYTIC JAUNDICE



OBSTRUCTIVE JAUNDICE

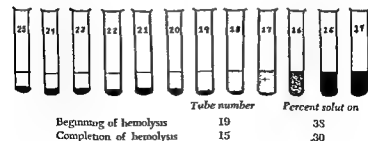


FIG 47 —Normal and abnormal results of the fragility test

- 6 Let both racks stand at room temperature for 2 hours
- 7 Take the control rack and starting with tube number 20 and going to the right toward the lower numbered tubes note the test tube which contains the first faint pink tinge. This is the beginning of hemolysis (Fig. 47). Record the test tube number and the per cent salt solution. Continue going to the right toward the lower numbered tubes and note the first tube which contains no sediment of cells. This is the completion of hemolysis (Fig. 47). Record the test tube number and the per cent salt solution. Now take the patient's rack and in the same manner record the readings for the beginning and completion of hemolysis.
- 8 Report the beginning and completion of hemolysis for both the control and the patient.

Normal Values

	Tube Number	Per Cent Solution
Beginning of hemolysis	22	44
Completion of hemolysis	17	34

Modified Sanford Method

- 1 Dry some chemically pure sodium chloride in oven. Make an accurate 0.5% solution as follows. Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.50 gram of the salt. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.
- 2 Get 2 test tube racks. Label one Control and the other Patient. Place 12 small test tubes in each rack and label the tubes in each rack as follows: 20, 24, 23, 22, 21, 20, 19, 18, 17, 16, 15 and 14. (See Fig. 46.)

Number on test tube	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
Number in 0.5% NaCl	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14
Number cc dist water	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1
% salt sol obtained	50	49	48	44	42	40	38	36	34	32	30	28

- 3 Using the chart below add to the test tubes of each rack the amount of 0.5% sodium chloride and distilled water indicated. Thus the test tubes labeled 25 get 2.5 cc of the 0.5% sodium chloride and 0.0 cc of distilled water. The per cent salt solution obtained by this dilution process is given in the bottom row of the chart. Note that the per cent salt solution in any test tube may be obtained by multiplying the test tube number by 0.02. For example test tube number 25 has a salt solution of $25 \times 0.02 = 0.50\%$.
- 4 Take the patient's rack and materials for a venipuncture to the patient. Make a venipuncture withdraw a few cc of blood and add 2 drops to each tube. Mix.
- 5 Make a venipuncture on a normal person withdraw a few cc of blood and add 2 drops to each tube of the control rack. Mix.
- 6 Let both racks stand at room temperature for 2 hours.
- 7 Take the control rack and starting with tube 25 and going to the right toward the lower numbered tubes note the test tube which contains the first faint pink tinge. This is the beginning of hemolysis (Fig. 47). Record the test tube number and the per cent salt solution. Continue going to the right toward the lower numbered tubes and note the first tube which contains no sediment of cells. This is the completion of hemolysis (Fig. 47). Record the test tube number and the per cent salt solution. Now take the patient's rack and in the same manner record the reading for the beginning and completion of hemolysis.
- 8 Report the beginning and completion of hemolysis for both the control and the patient.

In the following procedures a new methylene blue solution may be used in place of the brilliant cresyl blue solution. Its preparation is given in the Appendix on page 240. It is also permissible to use oxalated blood in place of finger tip blood. If the oxalated blood is not used immediately, however, it should be stored in the refrigerator.



FIG. 48 — Reticulocytes stained with a vital stain
(Haden *Principles of Hematology*)

Dry Method

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture. Into a small test tube place 3 drops of a 1% normal saline solution of brilliant cresyl blue (preparation given in Appendix on page 239).
- 2 Make a finger puncture and add 3 drops of blood to the test tube containing the brilliant cresyl blue. Mix. Let stand several minutes in order to stain the cells.
- 3 Gently shake the mixture of blood and brilliant cresyl blue. place a small drop on a glass slide and make a blood slide.
- 4 Allow to dry and counter stain with Wright's stain.

Normal Values

	<i>Tube Number</i>	<i>Per Cent Solution</i>
Beginning of hemolysis	22	44
Completion of hemolysis	17	34

RETICULOCYTE COUNT

Information Significant to the Student

There are 6 different stages in the development of a red cell. The first 4 stages are the young cells which are present in the cell factories of the bone marrow. The latter 2 stages are the older cells—the reticulocytes and erythrocytes—which are present in the blood stream. Under normal conditions there are 1 to 2 reticulocytes for every 100 erythrocytes. This gives us a normal reticulocyte count of 1 to 2%.

In certain anemias however there is a strike in the cell factories of the bone marrow. The production of red cells is decreased and the reticulocyte count drops. If the strike can be ended—by means of medication—the count returns to normal.

The reticulocyte count thus acts as a messenger of the bone marrow. A drop in the count signaling a strike and a rise in the count indicating recovery. This information is extremely useful in the diagnosis and treatment of many types of anemia.

Procedures for the Reticulocyte Count

In order to stain the granular net like substance in the reticulocyte (Fig. 48) a special dye must be used and the cells stained while the blood is fresh. Such a stain is called a vital stain. The count is then made by calculating the percentage of reticulocytes found in the company of erythrocytes (mature red cells).

For the reticulocyte count the dry method and the wet method are used. Both are equally satisfactory. The procedures are given below.

5. Let stand 10 minutes in order to stain the cell
6. Using the oil immersion objective record the number of reticulocytes (Fig. 48) seen while counting 1 000 mature red cells (erythrocytes). In order to narrow the microscopic field and thus make it easier to count the cells some technicians place a piece of paper containing a window in the eye piece of the microscope. Thus



7. Calculate the percentage. For example if 10 reticulocytes were seen the percentage is found as follows

$$\frac{10 \text{ (reticulocytes)}}{1\,000 \text{ (erythrocytes)}} \times 100 = 1\%$$

Normal Values

Adults	1% to 2%
Infants	4% to 8%

RED CELL INDICES

The red cell indices furnish the physician with information regarding the volume and hemoglobin content of the patient's red cells. This information is useful in the diagnosis and treatment of many types of anemia. Although the calculation of the indices are not met routinely by the technician they are frequently found on student examinations.

Before the red cell indices are considered the student should refresh his memory regarding mathematical shorthand and equivalents of weights and measures. The following information will be used in the discussion.

- 5 Using the oil immersion objective record the number of reticulocytes (Fig 48) seen while counting 1 000 mature red cells (erythrocytes) In order to narrow the microscopic field and thus make it easier to count the cells some technicians place a piece of paper containing a window in the eye piece of the microscope Thus



- 6 Calculate the per cent For example if 10 reticulocytes were seen the percentage is found as follows

$$\frac{10 \text{ (reticulocytes)}}{1\,000 \text{ (erythrocytes)}} \times 100 = 1\%$$

Normal Values

Adults	1% to 2%
Infants	4% to 8%

Wet Method

- 1 Get a bottle of a 1% methyl alcohol solution of brilliant cresyl blue (preparation given in the Appendix on page 239)
- 2 Place a drop of the brilliant cresyl blue on a glass slide With the same technique used in making a blood smear spread the brilliant cresyl blue over the slide
- 3 Get a few coverslips and materials for a finger puncture
- 4 Make a finger puncture place a drop of blood on the stained slide and cover with a coverslip (The coverslip may be rimmed with petrolatum to prevent drying)

Equivalents of Weights and Measures

The equivalents of weights and measures which will be referred to in this section are given below. A list of abbreviations is also included.

Abbreviations

Gm	=	gram
cm	=	centimeter
mm.	=	millimeter
cc	=	cubic centimeter
cu mm	=	cubic millimeter

Equivalents

1 Gm	=	10	micromicrograms
1 cm	=	10	mm
1 mm	=	10	microns
1 cc	=	10 ³	cu mm.
1 cu mm	=	10	cu microns

The red cell indices are outlined and discussed in the following manner:

- I Relationships between the hemoglobin content and the red cell count
 - A Mean corpuscular hemoglobin
 - B Color index
- II Relationships between the cell volume and the red cell count
 - A Mean corpuscular volume
 - B Volume index
- III Relationships between the hemoglobin content and the cell volume
 - A Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration
 - B Saturation index

MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN

(Average Cell Hemoglobin)

The mean corpuscular hemoglobin is the weight of hemoglobin in the average red cell. The normal values are 27 to 32 micromicrograms. When the patient's hemoglobin concen-

Mathematical Shorthand

By the use of mathematical shorthand considerable time may be saved in the recognition multiplication and division of large numbers. For example 1 000 000 may be written as 10^6 . And 1 000 000 multiplied by 1 000 000 then becomes simply $10^6 \times 10^6$. And 1 000 000 divided by 1 000 000 then becomes simply $\frac{10^6}{10^6}$.

The recognition multiplication and division of mathematical shorthand which will be used in this discussion are given below.

Recognition

$$10^1 = 10$$

$$10 = 100$$

$$10^3 = 1\,000$$

$$10^4 = 10\,000$$

$$10^5 = 100\,000$$

$$10^6 = 1\,000\,000$$

$$10^{12} = 1\,000\,000\,000\,000$$

$$2 \times 10^2 = 2 \times 100 = 200$$

$$2 \times 10^3 = 2 \times 1\,000 = 2\,000$$

Multiplication

When 10^a is multiplied by 10^b (a and b stand for any number) the rule is Add the exponents. Thus

$$10^a \times 10^b = 10^{a+b}$$

$$\text{For example } 10^2 \times 10^3 = 10^5 = 10^6$$

$$\text{and } 10 \times 10^6 = 10^{1+6} = 10^7$$

Division

When 10^a is divided by 10^b the rule is Subtract the exponents

$$\text{Thus } \frac{10^a}{10^b} = 10^{a-b}$$

$$\text{For example } \frac{10^2}{10^3} = 10^{2-3} = 10^{-1}$$

$$\text{and } \frac{10^9}{10^9} = 10^{9-9} = 10^0$$

$$\frac{14 \text{ Gm}}{100 \text{ cc}} \times \frac{10^3}{10} = \frac{14 \times 10^3 \text{ micromicrograms}}{10^3 \text{ cu mm}}$$

By dividing the figures on the right hand side of the equal sign we have the micromicrograms of Hb in 1 cu mm of blood
Thus

$$14 \times \frac{10^3}{10} = 14 \times 10 \text{ micromicrograms}$$

(3) Finding the denominator

Since the patient's red cell count is given as 5 000 000 (5×10^6) cells per cu mm the denominator does not have to be found

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean corpuscular Hb} &= \frac{\text{Micrograms of Hb in 1 cu mm of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}} \\ &= \frac{14 \times 10}{5 \times 10} \\ &= \frac{14 \times 10}{5} \\ &= 28 \text{ micromicrograms} \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$MCH = \frac{\text{Hb in grams per 100 cc} \times 10}{\text{RBC in million per cu mm}}$$

Example Patient's hemoglobin is 14 grams and RBC is 5 000 000

$$\begin{aligned} MCH &= \frac{14 \times 10}{50} \\ &= 28 \text{ micromicrogram} \end{aligned}$$

tration and red cell count have been determined the problem is solved in the manner given below

The mean corpuscular hemoglobin is often abbreviated MCH There are two methods of finding the MCH long method and short method The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps The procedures follow

Long Method

Given

Patient's hemoglobin	14 Gm per 100 cc blood
Patient's red cell count	5 000 000 cells per cu mm blood

The above hemoglobin may be written as $\frac{14 \text{ Gm}}{100 \text{ cc}}$

and the red cell count may be written as 5×10^6

Problem

Find the mean corpuscular hemoglobin

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Mean corpuscular Hb} = \frac{\text{Micromicrograms of Hb in 1 cu mm. of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

The problem here is to convert the patient's 14 grams of hemoglobin per 100 cc to micromicrograms per cu mm It is done as follows

From the table of weights and measures it is known that

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \text{ Gm} &= 10^3 \text{ micromicrograms} \\ 1 \text{ cc} &= 10 \text{ cu. mm} \end{aligned}$$

With this information the patient's 14 Gm of hemoglobin is converted to micromicrograms and the 100 cc of blood is converted to cu mm Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Color index} &= \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}}} \\ &= \frac{0.76}{0.80} = 0.95 \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$CI = \frac{\text{Hb in \%}}{\text{First 2 figures of RBC} \times 2}$$

Example Patient's hemoglobin is 100% and
RBC is 5 000 000

$$CI = \frac{100}{50 \times 2} = 1.0$$

MEAN CORPUSCULAR VOLUME

(Average Cell Volume)

The mean corpuscular volume is the volume occupied by the average red cell. The normal values are 80 to 90 cubic microns. When the patient's hematocrit reading (per cent of red cells in a given volume of blood) and red cell count have been determined the problem is solved in the manner given below.

The mean corpuscular volume is usually abbreviated MCV. There are 2 methods of finding the MCV—long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow.

Long Method

Given

Patient's hematocrit reading	40%
Patient's red cell count	5 000 000 cells per cu mm blood

The above hematocrit reading may be written as 40 and the red cell count may be written as 5×10^6

COLOR INDEX

In order to determine this index hematologists have designated 14.5 Gm as the normal value for the hemoglobin concentration and 5 000 000 as the normal value for the red cell count. When the patient's hemoglobin and red cell count are compared with these normal values the results can be expressed as a ratio which is known as the color index. The normal range is between 0.90 and 1.10.

The color index is usually abbreviated C.I. There are two methods of finding the C.I. — long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow.

Long Method

<i>Given</i>	<i>Patient</i>	<i>Normal</i>
Gm. of hemoglobin	11.0	14.5
Red cell count	4 000 000	5 000 000

Problem

Find the color index

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Color index} = \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}}}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}} = \frac{11.0}{14.5} = 0.76$$

(3) Finding the denominator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}} = \frac{4\,000\,000}{5\,000\,000} = 0.80$$

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Color index} &= \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}}} \\ &= \frac{0.6}{0.80} = 0.75\end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$CI = \frac{\text{Hb in \%}}{\text{First 2 figures of RBC} \times 2}$$

Example Patient's hemoglobin is 100% and
RBC is 5 000 000

$$CI = \frac{100}{50 \times 2} = 1.0$$

MEAN CORPUSCULAR VOLUME

(Average Cell Volume)

The mean corpuscular volume is the volume occupied by the average red cell. The normal values are 80 to 90 cubic microns. When the patient's hematocrit reading (per cent of red cells in a given volume of blood) and red cell count have been determined the problem is solved in the manner given below.

The mean corpuscular volume is usually abbreviated MCV. There are 2 methods of finding the MCV—long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow.

Long Method

Given

Patient's hematocrit reading	40%
Patient's red cell count	5 000 000 cells per cu mm blood

The above hematocrit reading may be written as 40 and the red cell count may be written as 5×10^6

Problem

Find the mean corpuscular volume

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Mean corpuscular volume} = \frac{\text{Cubic microns of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

The hematocrit reading is the per cent of red cells in a given volume of blood. Therefore the volume of red cells in 1 cu mm of patient's blood is found as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Vol of blood} \times \text{Hematocrit reading} & = & \text{Vol of cells} \\ 1 \text{ cu mm} \times 40 & = & 40 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

To convert the 40 cu mm of cells to cu microns multiply by 10^3 (the number of cu microns in 1 cu mm). Thus

$$40 \text{ cu mm} \times 10 = \text{cu microns}$$

Therefore

$$40 \times 10^3 = \text{cu micron of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}$$

(3) Finding the denominator

Since the patient's red cell count is given as $\approx 100,000$ (5×10^6) cells per cu mm the denominator does not have to be found.

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean corpuscular volume} &= \frac{\text{Cubic microns of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}} \\ &= \frac{40 \times 10}{5 \times 10^6} \\ &= \frac{40 \times 10}{5} \\ &= 80 \text{ cu microns} \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$MCA = \frac{\text{Hematocrit reading} \times 10}{\text{RBC in millions per cu. mm}}$$

Example Patient's hematocrit reading is 40%
and RBC is 5 000 000

$$MCA = \frac{40 \times 10}{50} = 80 \text{ cu. microns}$$

VOLUME INDEX

In order to determine this index hematologists have designated 42% as the normal value for the hematocrit reading and 5 000 000 as the normal value for the red cell count. When the patient's hematocrit reading and red cell count are compared with these normal values the results can be expressed as a ratio which is known as the volume index. It is found in the manner given below. The normal range is between 0.90 and 1.10.

The volume index is usually abbreviated V I. There are two methods of finding the V I—long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow.

Long Method

Given

	<i>Patient</i>	<i>Normal</i>
Hematocrit reading %	39%	42%
Red cell count	4 500 000	5 000 000

Problem

Find the volume index

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Volume index} = \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit reading}}{\text{Normal hematocrit reading}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}}}$$

Problem

Find the mean corpuscular volume

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Mean corpuscular volume} = \frac{\text{Cubic microns of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

The hematocrit reading is the per cent of red cells in a given volume of blood. Therefore the volume of red cells in 1 cu mm of patient's blood is found as follows

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Vol of blood} \times \text{Hematocrit reading} & = & \text{Vol of cell} \\ 1 \text{ cu mm} \times 40 & = & 40 \text{ cu mm} \end{array}$$

To convert the 40 cu mm of cells to cu microns multiply by 10^3 (the number of cu microns in 1 cu mm). Thus

$$40 \text{ cu mm} \times 10 = \text{cu microns}$$

Therefore

$$40 \times 10^3 = \text{cu microns of cell in 1 cu mm of blood}$$

(3) Finding the denominator

Since the patient's red cell count is given as 5 000 000 (5×10^6) cells per cu mm the denominator does not have to be found

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean corpuscular volume} &= \frac{\text{Cubic microns of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}}{\text{Number of cells in 1 cu mm of blood}} \\ &= \frac{40 \times 10}{5 \times 10} \\ &= \frac{40 \times 10}{5} \\ &= 80 \text{ cu microns} \end{aligned}$$

it is in common usage it will be included here. When the patient's hemoglobin concentration and hematocrit reading have been determined the problem is solved in the manner given below. The normal values for the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration are 33 to 35%.

The mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration is usually abbreviated MCHC. There are two methods of finding the MCHC—long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow.

Long Method

Given

Patient's hemoglobin	14 Gm. per 100 cc blood
Patient's hematocrit reading	40%

Problem

Find the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration.

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Mean corpuscular Hb conc} = \frac{\text{Gm. of Hb in 100 cc blood}}{\text{cc of packed red cells in 100 cc blood}} \times 100$$

(2) Finding the numerator

Since the patient's hemoglobin is given as 14 Gm per 100 cc of blood the numerator does not have to be found.

(3) Finding the denominator

Since the hematocrit reading is the per cent of red cells in a given volume of blood the cc of packed red cells in 100 cc of blood is found as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Vol of blood} \times \text{Hematocrit reading} &= \\ \text{Vol packed red cell} & \\ 100 \text{ cc} \times 40\% &= 40 \text{ cc} \end{aligned}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit reading}}{\text{Normal hematocrit reading}} = \frac{38}{42} = 90$$

(3) Finding the denominator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}} = \frac{4\,500\,000}{5\,000\,000} = 90$$

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Volume index} &= \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit reading}}{\text{Normal hematocrit reading}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's red cell count}}{\text{Normal red cell count}}} \\ &= \frac{90}{90} = 1.0 \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$VI = \frac{\text{Hematocrit reading} \times 0.118}{\text{RBC in millions per cu mm}}$$

Example Patient's hematocrit reading is 38%
and RBC is 4 500 000

$$\begin{aligned} VI &= \frac{38 \times 0.118}{4.5} \\ &= 1.0 \end{aligned}$$

MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN CONCENTRATION

The per cent of hemoglobin in the patient's packed red cell volume is referred to as the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration. Actually the term is a misnomer* but since

From a mathematical point of view whenever the word average or mean is found in a formula the number of particles used to arrive at the average must be included in the denominator. This does not occur in this formula. Actually what the formula does is to find the grams of hemoglobin per cc of packed red cells. This is then multiplied by 100 and the per cent obtained.

Problem

Find the saturation index

Solution

(1) Formula

$$\text{Saturation index} = \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit}}{\text{Normal hematocrit}}}$$

(2) Finding the numerator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}} = \frac{17.0}{14.5} = 0.83$$

(3) Finding the denominator

$$\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit}}{\text{Normal hematocrit}} = \frac{36}{42} = 0.86$$

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Saturation index} &= \frac{\frac{\text{Patient's hemoglobin}}{\text{Normal hemoglobin}}}{\frac{\text{Patient's hematocrit}}{\text{Normal hematocrit}}} \\ &= \frac{0.83}{0.86} = 0.97 \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$SI = \frac{\text{Hb in per cent}}{\text{Hematocrit reading} \times 2.3}$$

Example Patient's Hb is 80% and hematocrit reading is 36%

$$SI = \frac{80}{36 \times 2.3} = 0.97$$

(4) Substituting in the formula of step (1)

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Mean corpuscular Hb conc} &= \frac{\text{Gm of Hb in } 100 \text{ cc blood}}{\text{cc of packed red cells in } 100 \text{ cc blood}} \times 100 \\
 &= \frac{14}{40} \times 100 \\
 &= 35\%
 \end{aligned}$$

Short Method

$$\text{MCHC} = \frac{\text{Hb in grams per } 100 \text{ cc} \times 100}{\text{Hematocrit reading}}$$

Example Patient's Hb is 14 grams and hematocrit reading is 40%

$$\text{MCHC} = \frac{14 \times 100}{40} = 35\%$$

SATURATION INDEX

In order to determine this index hematologists have designated 14 gms as the normal value for the hemoglobin concentration and 42% as the normal value for the hematocrit reading. (These are the same values used for the determination of the color index and volume index.) When the patient's hemoglobin and hematocrit reading are compared with these normal values the results can be expressed as a ratio which is known as the saturation index. The normal range for the saturation index is 0.90 to 1.10.

The saturation index is usually abbreviated S I. There are two methods of finding the S I: long method and short method. The long method gives all the steps involved whereas the short method consolidates several steps. The procedures follow:

Long Method

Given

	<i>Normal</i>	<i>Normal</i>
Gm of hemoglobin	12.0	14.0
Hematocrit reading	36%	42%

This chapter presents those tests which are associated with blood coagulation. The information which they render the physician is generally used in the diagnosis and treatment of hemorrhagic diseases. The tests will be considered in the following order:

- Bleeding time
- Coagulation time
- Clot retraction time
- Prothrombin time
- Platelet count
- Capillary resistance test

BLEEDING TIME

Information Significant to the Student

The bleeding time is the time required for a small cut to stop bleeding. The normal time is 1 to 3 minutes. It is increased in the following two hemorrhagic diseases, essential thrombocytopenic purpura and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn.

Procedures for the Bleeding Time

The bleeding time is determined by making a small cut in the skin and noting the time required for bleeding to cease. The procedures for the Duke method and the Ivy method follow.

Duke Method

1. Get materials for a finger puncture: a piece of filter paper and a watch with a second hand.
2. Puncture the finger deeply enough to insure a free flow of blood. Record the time.
3. At half minute intervals remove the drops of blood with the filter paper. When blood ceases to flow, record the time.

Chapter 4

Test Associated with Blood Coagulation

ALTHOUGH the exact mechanism of blood coagulation is not thoroughly understood the theory of Howell offers a workable hypothesis. According to this theory the following five substances are involved in blood coagulation:

1 Prothrombin	found in plasma
2 Antiprothrombin	found in plasma
3 Calcium	found in plasma
4 Fibrinogen	found in plasma
5 Thromboplastin	found in tissue juices and platelet disintegration

In order for blood to clot the fifth constituent thromboplastin must be present. It is obtained from tissue juices and the disintegration of platelets.

When thromboplastin is present it neutralizes antiprothrombin and leaves prothrombin free. The free prothrombin then reacts with calcium to form thrombin. The thrombin unites with fibrinogen to produce fibrin. The fibrin, a net-like substance, entangles the blood cells to form the clot.

The reaction may be thought of as taking place in the following manner:

- 1 Prothrombin + Antiprothrombin *absence of* thromboplastin \longrightarrow bound prothrombin
- 2 Prothrombin + Antiprothrombin *presence of* thromboplastin \longrightarrow free prothrombin
- 3 Free prothrombin + Calcium \longrightarrow Thrombin
- 4 Thrombin + Fibrinogen \longrightarrow Fibrin
- 5 Fibrin + Blood cells \longrightarrow Clot

COAGULATION TIME

Information Significant to the Student

The coagulation time is the number of minutes required for blood to coagulate. It is increased in hemophilia, obstructive jaundice and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn. The various methods of determination and their normal values are given below.

	<i>Minutes</i>
1. Capillary blood methods	
a. Slide method	2 to 6
b. Capillary tube method	2 to 6
2. Venous blood methods	
a. Lee and White method	5 to 10
b. Howell method	10 to 30

The capillary blood methods have a shorter coagulation time than the venous blood methods because substances (essentially thromboplastin) in the tissue juices aid in the coagulation of blood. Because of the difference in normal values the technician should always mention the method of procedure and the normal values in his report.

Procedures for the Coagulation Time

The coagulation time is determined by placing a small amount of blood on a glass slide (or in a tube) and recording the time required for coagulation to take place. The procedures for the methods listed above are given in detail.

Capillary Blood Methods

1. Slide Method

1. Get materials for a finger puncture: a glass slide, a needle, and a watch with a second hand.
2. Make a finger puncture deep enough to insure a free flow of blood. Wipe away the first 3 drops, record the time, and place several separate drops on the slide.

- 4 The bleeding time is the time elapsed between the puncture of the finger and the cessation of bleeding (Fig. 49)



FIG. 49 — Normal bleeding time

Ivy Method

- 1 Get a blood pressure kit materials for a finger puncture a piece of filter paper and a watch with a second hand
- 2 Place the blood pressure cuff just above the bend in the elbow and inflate to 40 mm pressure
- 3 Cleanse the surface of the forearm with the antiseptic Dry. Make a rather deep puncture on the fleshy portion of the forearm just below the bend in the elbow. Record the time
- 4 At half minute intervals remove the drops of blood with the filter paper. When blood ceases to flow record the time
- 5 The bleeding time is the time elapsed between the puncture of the forearm and the cessation of bleeding

Normal values 1 to 3 minutes

- 3 After filling the capillary tubes allow 2 minutes to elapse. Then carefully break off a piece of the tubing and look for a span of fibrin between the broken ends (Fig 50). Continue at half minute intervals until a span of fibrin is seen. Record the time.
- 4 The coagulation time is the time elapsed between the filling of the capillary tubes and the appearance of the span of fibrin.

Normal values 3 to 6 minutes

Venous Blood Methods

1 Lee and White Method

- 1 Get a sterile needle, sterile syringe and 3 small test tubes. Rinse them all with a sterile normal saline solution (preparation given in the Appendix on page 240). Label the test tubes #1, #2 and #3. Get a watch with a second hand.



FIG 51 —Completion of the coagulation time in the venous blood methods

- 2 Make a venipuncture, withdraw about 5 cc of blood, record the time and transfer 1 cc of blood to each test tube.

- 3 At half minute intervals draw the needle through a drop of blood until it picks up fibrin threads and drags them along. Record the time.
- 4 The time elapsed between the placing of the first drop of blood on the slide and the observation of the fibrin threads is the coagulation time.

Normal values 2 to 6 minutes

B. Capillary Tube Method

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture several capillary tubes and a watch with a second hand.

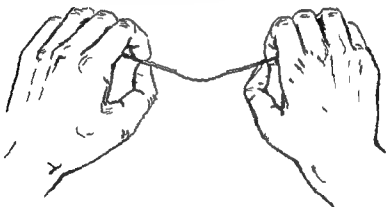


FIG. 50 — Span of fibrin in the determination of the coagulation time (Capillary tube method)

- 2 Make a finger puncture deep enough to insure a free flow of blood. Wipe away the first 2 drops, record the time and fill 3 or 4 capillary tubes. (Several capillary tubes are filled because they may be necessary if the coagulation time is prolonged.)

CLOT RETRACTION TIME

Information Significant to the Student

The clot retraction time measures the ability of the blood clot to retract. In normal blood the clot retraction is well under way at the end of 2 hours and is complete at the end of 24 hours. The clot retraction time is increased whenever the platelet count is decreased. Consequently it is increased in the hemorrhagic disease essential thrombocytopenic purpura.

Procedure for the Clot Retraction Time

The clot retraction time is determined by placing about 5 cc of blood in a test tube and making several observations of the progress of clot retraction. The procedure follows:

1. Get materials for a venipuncture and a test tube capable of holding 5 cc of blood.

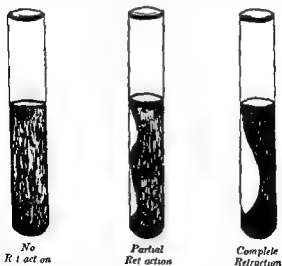


FIG. 52 — Retraction of the blood clot

- 3 Allow 4 minutes to elapse
- 4 Now take tube #1 and gently tilt it every half minute until a clot forms and blood will not flow from the tube (Fig 51)
- 5 Now take tube #2 and gently tilt it every half minute until a clot forms and blood will not flow from the tube
- 6 Now take tube #3 and gently tilt it every half minute until a clot forms and blood will not flow from the tube. Record the time
- 7 The coagulation time is the time elapsed between the withdrawal of blood and the completion of coagulation in tube #3

Normal values 5 to 10 minutes

B Howell Method

- 1 Take a small portion (about the size of your thumbnail) of petrolatum and dissolve it in about 5 cc of ether. Coat a syringe with the mixture by sucking it up into the syringe and then expelling it. Cut a small test tube and sterile needle
- 2 Using the same syringe make a venipuncture and withdraw about 3 cc of blood. Record the time and transfer the blood to the test tube
- 3 Coagulation is complete when the blood doesn't flow from the tube (Fig 51). Therefore at half minute intervals gently tilt the tube until coagulation takes place. Record the time
- 4 The coagulation time is the time elapsed between the withdrawal of blood and the completion of coagulation

Normal values 10 to 20 minutes

and thromboplastin. This brings together all the necessary ingredients for the formation of a clot. The time interval between the addition of the plasma and the appearance of the clot is called the prothrombin time.

The method using Solu Plastin and the method using Simplastin are given below.

Method Using Solu Plastin

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture. Into a test tube pipet exactly 0.5 cc of 1.34% (0.1 molar) sodium oxalate. The preparation of the sodium oxalate is given in the Appendix on page 242.
- 2 Make a venipuncture and add exactly 4.5 cc of blood to the tube. Put the cork in the mouth of the tube and invert several times to mix the blood and anticoagulant. (In order to measure out exactly 4.5 cc of blood some technicians withdraw about 5 cc, remove the needle, place several gauze pads over the neck of the syringe and force out blood until it reaches the 4.5 mark on the syringe. The syringe then contains exactly 4.5 cc of blood.)
- 3 Within the next 10 minutes centrifuge the blood.
- 4 Carefully pipet off the plasma, transfer to a test tube and place in a 37° C water bath. **NOTE:** If the plasma is not used immediately, it should be stored in the refrigerator. Upon removal from the refrigerator it should be warmed to 37° C.
- 5 Pipet 0.1 cc of Solu Plastin into a small test tube. Add 0.1 cc of the 0.0125 molar calcium chloride which comes with the Solu Plastin. Mix. Place the tube in the 37° C water bath.
- 6 Note the time, quickly add 0.1 cc of plasma, mix and tilt the tube every few seconds.

- 2 Make a venipuncture withdraw about 5 cc of blood, and transfer to the test tube
- 3 Place in an incubator at 37°C and observe at the end of 2 * 6 18 and 24 hours Each time record the clot retraction as no retraction partial retraction or complete retraction (Fig 52)

PROTHROMBIN TIME

Information Significant to the Student

During many operations the surgeon seeks to prevent blood clots. And in various heart conditions the physician endeavors to dissolve blood clots. Blood clots may be prevented and dissolved by the administration of Dicumarol ✓

The Dicumarol decreases the concentration of prothrombin. When prothrombin is decreased the blood takes longer to clot. This decreased clotting activity is favorable to the prevention and breakdown of blood clots.

The decreased clotting activity however must be controlled for if certain limits are exceeded a hemorrhage may occur. Consequently a yardstick is needed to measure clotting activity. This yardstick is the prothrombin time.

The normal values for the prothrombin time are 12 to 17 seconds. During treatment with Dicumarol the prothrombin time is usually kept between 28 and 40 seconds. This is accomplished by regulating the dosage of the drug and running prothrombin times at frequent intervals.

Procedures for the Prothrombin Time

There are many procedures for determining prothrombin time. Practically all are based on the original research of Dr A J Quick. Basically the test involves adding plasma which contains the prothrombin—to a solution of calcium.

Sometimes normal blood will form a clot which will stick to the walls of the test tube and any retraction of the clot will not be noticeable. Therefore if the clot is sticking to the walls of the test tube at the end of two hours loosen it gently with a wooden applicator stick.

mouth of the tube and invert several times to mix the blood and anticoagulant. (In order to measure out exactly 4.5 cc of blood - some technicians withdraw about 5 cc - remove the needle - place several gauze pads over the neck of the syringe - and force out blood until it reaches the 4.5 mark on the syringe. The syringe then contains exactly 4.5 cc of blood.)

- 3 Within the next 10 minutes centrifuge the blood.
- 4 Carefully pipet off the plasma - transfer to a small test tube - and place in a 37° C water bath. **NOTE** - If the plasma is not used immediately - it should be stored in the refrigerator. Upon removal from the refrigerator it should be warmed to 37° C.
- 5 Preparation of Simplastin suspension. If you have the 20 determination vial of Simplastin - add exactly 4.0 cc of distilled water and shake *gently*. If you have the 6 determination vial of Simplastin - add 1.6 cc of distilled water and shake *gently*. When not in use - store in the refrigerator.
- 6 Pipet 0.2 cc of the Simplastin suspension into a small test tube. Place the tube in a 37° C water bath. Let sit for a few minutes.
- 7 Note the time - quickly add 0.1 cc of plasma mix - and tilt the tube every few seconds until a gelatinous clot appears. Note the time. (As an alternative procedure to tilting the tube - some technicians use a nichrome wire loop and agitate the solution until the clot sticks to the loop.)
- 8 The prothrombin time is the number of seconds elapsing between the addition of the plasma and the appearance of the gelatinous clot.

until a gelatinous clot forms. Note the time (As an alternative procedure to tilting the tube some technicians agitate the mixture with a nichrome wire loop. When the clot forms it sticks to the loop.)

- 7 The prothrombin time is the number of seconds elapsing between the addition of the plasma and the appearance of the gelatinous clot.
- 8 A control's time comes with the box of Solu Plastin. In reporting the prothrombin time some laboratories report the patient's time and the control's time. Other laboratories report not only the patient's time and control's time but also the prothrombin activity. This is discussed below.
- 9 The prothrombin activity is the patient's value compared with a control's value. For example, suppose the patient's plasma clotted in 20 seconds. And it had been found that a 50% solution of a control's plasma also clotted in 20 seconds. Then the patient's prothrombin activity would be 50%.
- 10 In order to compensate for differences in technique and reagents each laboratory sets up its own graph or table for determining the prothrombin activity. The directions for preparing the graph are given with the bottle of Solu Plastin.

Method Using Simplastin

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture. Into a test tube pipet exactly 0.5 cc of 1.34% (0.1 molar) sodium oxalate. The preparation of the sodium oxalate is given in the Appendix on page 242.
- 2 Make a venipuncture and add exactly 4.0 cc of blood to the tube. Put the cork in the

mouth of the tube and invert several times to mix the blood and anticoagulant (In order to measure out exactly 4.5 cc of blood some technicians withdraw about 5 cc remove the needle place several gauze pads over the neck of the syringe and force out blood until it reaches the 4.5 mark on the syringe The syringe then contains exactly 4.5 cc of blood)

- 3 Within the next 10 minutes centrifuge the blood
- 4 Carefully pipet off the plasma transfer to a small test tube and place in a 37° C water bath *NOTE* If the plasma is not used immediately it should be stored in the refrigerator Upon removal from the refrigerator it should be warmed to 37° C
- 5 Preparation of Simplastin suspension If you have the 20 *determination* vial of Simplastin add exactly 4.0 cc of distilled water and shake *gently* If you have the 6 *determination* vial of Simplastin add 1.0 cc of distilled water and shake *gently* When not in use store in the refrigerator
- 6 Pipet 0.2 cc of the Simplastin suspension into a small test tube Place the tube in a 37° C water bath Let sit for a few minutes
- 7 Note the time quickly add 0.1 cc of plasma mix and tilt the tube every few seconds until a gelatinous clot appears Note the time (As an alternative procedure to tilting the tube some technicians use a nichrome wire loop and agitate the solution until the clot sticks to the loop)
- 8 The prothrombin time is the number of seconds elapsing between the addition of the plasma and the appearance of the gelatinous clot

- until a gelatinous clot forms. Note the time (As an alternative procedure to tilting the tube, some technicians agitate the mixture with a nichrome wire loop. When the clot forms, it sticks to the loop.)
- 7 The prothrombin time is the number of seconds elapsing between the addition of the plasma and the appearance of the gelatinous clot.
 - 8 A control's time comes with the box of Solu Plastin. In reporting the prothrombin time, some laboratories report the patient's time and the control's time. Other laboratories report not only the patient's time and control's time, but also the prothrombin activity. This is discussed below.
 - 9 The prothrombin activity is the patient's value compared with a control's value. For example, suppose the patient's plasma clotted in 20 seconds. And it had been found that a 50% solution of a control's plasma also clotted in 20 seconds. Then the patient's prothrombin activity would be 50%.
 - 10 In order to compensate for differences in technique and reagents, each laboratory sets up its own graph or table for determining the prothrombin activity. The directions for preparing the graph are given with the bottle of Solu Plastin.

Method Using Simplastin

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture. Into a test tube, pipet exactly 0.5 cc of 1.34% (0.1 molar) sodium oxalate. The preparation of the sodium oxalate is given in the Appendix on page 242.
- 2 Make a venipuncture and add exactly 4.5 cc of blood to the tube. Put the cork in the

1 second Control Column		15 second Control Column		16 second Control Column	
Patient's Prothrombin Time	Prothrombin Activity	Patient's Prothrombin Time	Prothrombin Activity	Patient's Prothrombin Time	Prothrombin Activity
14 sec	100%	15 sec	100%	16 sec	100%
15 sec	86%	16 sec	86%	17 sec	86%
16 sec	72%	17 sec	72%	18 sec	70%
17 sec	60%	18 sec	61%	19 sec	63%
18 sec	49%	19 sec	50%	20 sec	50%
19 sec	44%	20 sec	45%	21 sec	46%
20 sec	40%	21 sec	41%	22 sec	39%
21 sec	35%	22 sec	35%	23 sec	36%
22 sec	28%	23 sec	34%	24 sec	34%
23 sec	2%	24 sec	30%	25 sec	29%
24 sec	25%	25 sec	27%	26 sec	25%
25 sec	23%	26 sec	24%	27 sec	24%
26 sec	21%	27 sec	23%	28 sec	24%
27 sec	20%	28 sec	22%	29 sec	23%
28 sec	19%	29 sec	21%	30 sec	21%
29 sec	18%	30 sec	20%	31 sec	20%
30 sec	17%	31 sec	19%	32 sec	19%
31 sec	16%	32 sec	18%	33 sec	18%
32 sec	16%	33 sec	17%	34 sec	16%
33 sec	15%	34 sec	16%	35 sec	16%
34 sec	14%	35 sec	16%	36 sec	15%
35 sec	13%	36 sec	15%	37 sec	15%
36 sec	12 5%	37 sec	14%	38 sec	14%
more than 36 sec	less than 12 5%	38 sec	13%	39 sec	13%
		39 sec	13%	40 sec	13%
		40 sec	12 5%	41 sec	12 5%
		more than 40 sec	less than 12 5%	more than 41 sec	less than 12 5%

FIG 53 — Finding the prothrombin activity

PLATELET COUNT

Information Significant to the Student

The four stages in the development of a blood platelet or thrombocyte are illustrated in Figure 54. The first three cells are found in the bone marrow only; the final stage (the

- 9 A control time is obtained by running a prothrombin time with normal or Diagnostic Plasma. Some laboratories run a control with each test where as other laboratories run a control with each new batch of Simplastin.
- 10 In reporting the prothrombin time some laboratories report the patient's time and the control's time. Other laboratories report not only the patient's time and the control's time but also the prothrombin activity. The prothrombin activity is found in the manner indicated below.

How to Find the Prothrombin Activity

The prothrombin activity is a comparison of the patient's prothrombin time to normal prothrombin time. It is found as follows:

Find the control's time by either referring to the box containing the reagent or running a prothrombin time with normal or Diagnostic Plasma. The usual time for the control is 14, 15 or 16 seconds.

Find the column in Figure 53 which represents the control's time. If the control's time is 14 seconds the column on the left is used. If the control's time is 15 seconds the column in the middle is used. And if the control's time is 16 seconds the column on the right is used.

Refer to the correct column for your particular control, get the patient's prothrombin time and read off the prothrombin activity.

Example Suppose the control's time is 15 seconds. We would then use the 15 second control column. This is the middle column in Figure 53.

Now suppose the patient's prothrombin time is 17 seconds. By referring to this middle column we find that a patient's prothrombin time of 17 seconds gives a prothrombin activity of 72%.

For the data appearing in Figure 53 we are indebted to a paper written by Dr. Milton R. Bronstein which appeared in the *Journal of the Medical Society of New Jersey*, Vol. 49, December 1952.

Procedure for a Platelet Count

The direct method and indirect method are used to determine the platelet count. In the direct method the blood is diluted, placed in a counting chamber, and the platelets are counted. In the indirect method the ratio of platelets to red cells is determined by a study of the blood slide. It is assumed that this ratio of platelets to red cells also exists in one cubic millimeter of blood. Therefore the ratio is multiplied by the red cell count since the red cell count is the number of cells in 1 cu. mm. of blood. The platelet count with this method is slightly higher than the results obtained by the direct method. The two procedures follow.

Direct Method (Todd and Sanford)

1. Get materials for a finger puncture: a red cell pipet and a bottle of either Rees and Ficker or Leake and Gux diluting fluid. These diluting fluids should be filtered before use. They are prepared as indicated in the Appendix under Preparation of Solutions and Reagents.
2. Moisten the bore of the red cell pipet by drawing diluting fluid up and down into the stem of the pipet. (This keeps the platelets from sticking to the bore.) Make a finger puncture and wipe away the first drop. Draw blood to the 0.5 mark and diluting fluid to the 101 mark. This is a 1 in 200 dilution. The remainder of the count should be completed within 15 minutes because the platelets disintegrate rapidly.
3. Shake the pipet for 2 to 3 minutes, discard the first 4 drops, and charge a counting chamber. Cover the counting chamber with a petri dish to decrease evaporation and let stand 5 minutes to allow the platelets to settle.
4. Observe Figure 50 in which a circle has been placed around the platelets. You will note

mature blood platelet) is present in the circulating blood. When platelets disintegrate they release thromboplastin, one of the essential factors in blood coagulation. This is their primary function. The platelet count in a normal person is 250,000 to 400,000 cells per cubic millimeter. The count is markedly reduced in essential thrombocytopenic purpura—one of the hemorrhagic diseases.

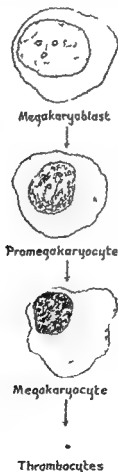


FIG. 54 — Development of blood platelets (thrombocytes)

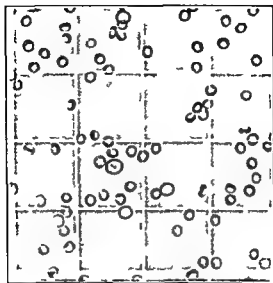
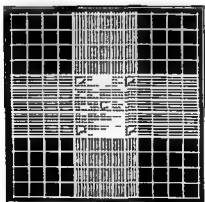


FIG 5b — Platelets seen with the high power (4 mm) objective
(Courtesy of Mr Cecil Gilliam)



A.M.

FIG 5c — Section of the counting chamber used in the platelet count
(Direct method)

that the platelets are about one tenth the size of red cells and sometimes come in groups of 2 3 or 4. You will find that they appear as tiny glistening objects and are best seen when the fine adjustment of the microscope is rotated back and forth.

- 5 Using the high power (4 mm) objective count the platelets in the 5 sections marked with a P in Figure 56 (These are the same five sections used in making a red cell count)
- 6 Calculate the number of platelets in 1 cubic millimeter of blood. For example if a total of 30 platelets were counted in the 5 P sections the calculation is made in the manner given below. The correction factors are the same as those used for the red cell count and they have been derived in the same manner.

Total platelet in 5 P sect	Dil cor × factor	Vol cor × factor	Platelets = in 1 cu mm
30	× 200	× 50	= 300 000

Normal values 250 000 to 350 000 per cu mm

Indirect Method

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture a few glass slides a red cell pipet and some red cell diluting fluid
- 2 Make a finger puncture and wipe away the first drop. Dilute the blood for a red cell count by drawing blood to the 0.5 mark and diluting fluid to the 101 mark. Make a blood slide.
- 3 Stain the blood slide with Wright's stain meanwhile make the red cell count.
- 4 Take the stained blood slide use the oil immersion objective and record the number of platelets seen while counting 1 000 red cells.



FIG. 11. A positive capillary retractor test. (From Hrahe Roy R. *Disorders of the Blood* 2nd edition J. B. Lippincott Co.)

(Platelets of the blood slide are illustrated in Plate VII page 228. They are the six small bluish purple cells seen directly above the name Fise I remaux.)

In order to narrow the microscopic field and thus make it easier to count the cells some technicians place a piece of paper containing a window in the eye piece of the microscope. Thus



- 5 Calculation The platelet count equals the ratio of platelets to red cells multiplied by the red cell count. For example if you have the following data the calculation is made in the manner given below

Red cell count	5 000 000
Red cells counted on slide	1 000
Platelets recorded	50

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Platelet count} &= \frac{\text{Number of platelets counted on slide}}{\text{Number of red cells counted on slide}} \times \text{red cell count} \\
 &= \frac{50}{1\,000} \times 5\,000\,000 \\
 &= 250\,000
 \end{aligned}$$

Normal values 250 000 to 350 000 per cu. mm

CAPILLARY RESISTANCE TEST

Information Significant to the Student

The capillary resistance test measures the ability of the capillaries to resist pressure. When a blood pressure cuff is placed above the bend in the elbow and inflated to about

Chapter 3

Tests Related to Blood Groups

THE discovery of blood groups opened new frontiers in the field of hematology. These frontiers have led to many new laboratory tests. Some tests are used to transfuse blood and other tests are used to aid infants in their battle against the ruthless hemolytic anemia. These tests are discussed in this chapter. The material is arranged as follows:

- Basic Theory
- ABO Grouping
- Rh Typing
- Cross Match
- Coombs' Test
- Rh Titer

BASIC THEORY

Blood may be separated into cells and plasma or serum. When the cells of one person are mixed with the plasma of another individual, the red cells often become clumped or agglutinated. The agglutination is due to a reaction between substances in the red cells called agglutinogens and substances in the plasma known as agglutinins.

Agglutinogens and agglutinins can not be seen. When they react with each other, however, they produce a clumping of the red cells which is easily observable. A simple analogy would be electricity. We can not see the positive and negative charges, but we can see their effects.

The agglutinogens, like the color of a person's eyes, are inherited characteristics and consequently never change. Their presence or absence in the blood enables everyone to be placed in specific blood groups.

100 millimeters the pressure will not cause any noticeable effect on normal capillaries. However in essential thrombocytopenic purpura the pressure will cause the capillaries to rupture. The escaping blood then produces tiny spots known as petechiæ (Fig. 57).

Procedure for the Capillary Resistance Test

RUMPEL LEFDE METHOD

- 1 Using a marking pencil or pen mark any petechiæ already present on the patient's forearm
- 2 Place the cuff of a blood pressure apparatus above the bend in the elbow. Inflate at about 100 millimeters pressure and maintain for 5 minutes
- 3 Release the pressure and count the number of fresh petechiæ formed (Fig. 57)

Agglutinin b is frequently referred to as beta or anti B and agglutinin α is often called alpha or anti A. It is well to keep these synonyms in mind.

Table 16 — Agglutinogens and Agglutinins of the Four Major Blood Groups

Blood Group	Agglutinogens in Red Cells	Agglutinins in Plasma
A	A	b
B	B	a
AB	AB	none
O	O	a and b

When the cells of a group A person are placed in a test tube and plasma or serum from a group B person is added the red cells become clumped or agglutinated. The agglutination is explained by the presence of agglutinogen A in the red cells of the group A person and the presence of agglutinin a (anti A) in the plasma of the group B individual. Whenever like agglutinogens and agglutinins (A and a or A and ab, B and b or B and ab) are mixed in a test tube agglutination takes place. This is followed by hemolysis of the red cells and consequently is of considerable concern in the transfusion of blood.

Although the above agglutination reaction takes place in a test tube the situation is slightly different in actual practice. In the transfusion of blood, it is found that any agglutinins in the donor's plasma are so diluted by the patient's blood that their ability to clump the cells of the patient is negligible. In fact certain substances (blood group specific substances A and B) can be added to the donor's blood which will completely neutralize the agglutinins.

The real danger in the transfusion of blood lies in the clumping of the donor's cells by the agglutinins in the patient's plasma. If the agglutinogens in the donor's red cells meet similar agglutinins (A meets a or ab or B meets b or ab) upon entering the patient a reaction takes place between the incoming agglutinogens and the agglutinins of the patient. This reaction causes the agglutination and hemolysis

A discussion of the agglutinogens and the blood groups which they give rise to is found on the following pages. The material will be arranged in the order indicated below.

- a The four major blood groups
- b Agglutinogens M, N, and MN
- c The Rh factor
- d The subgroups

The Four Major Blood Groups

Research workers have named the four major blood groups A, B, AB, and O. Every person may be classified in one of these blood groups, his specific group being determined by the type of agglutinogen in his red cells. An individual in group A has agglutinogen A in his red cells, and a person in group B has agglutinogen B. People in group AB have both agglutinogen A and agglutinogen B in their red cells, and those in group O have neither agglutinogen A nor agglutinogen B. The breakdown of the blood groups according to population is given in Table 15.

Table 15—Breakdown of the Blood Groups

Blood Group	Approximate Per Cent of Population
AB	5
B	10
A	40
O	45

When the blood from a group A person is separated into cells and plasma, the red cells contain agglutinogen A and the plasma contains a substance which has been given the name agglutinin b. Note that the agglutinogen is designated with a capital letter, whereas the agglutinin is given a small letter. People in the other blood groups have the following agglutinins. Those in group B have agglutinin a in their plasma; people in group AB have no agglutinins in their plasma; and those in group O have both agglutinin b and agglutinin a. The above facts are summarized in Table 16 and should be thoroughly understood before proceeding

are of legal interest in paternity tests because every person has one of these agglutinogens and the particular type which he possesses must be inherited from one of his parents. For example, if a child has agglutinogen M in his red cells, agglutinogen M must also be present in the blood of his father or mother.

The Rh Factor

In 1937 Landsteiner and Wiener were endeavoring to discover new agglutinogens in the red cells of human blood. They believed that other agglutinogens were present in addition to agglutinogens A B AB M N and MN. Their research confirmed their assumptions and they discovered another agglutinogen. Since these men were using rhesus monkeys as experimental animals they called the new agglutinogen the Rh factor—designating it by the first two letters of the word rhesus. Further investigation revealed that the Rh factor was present in 85% of the population. People having this agglutinogen in their red cells were called Rh positive whereas those lacking it were classified as Rh negative.

At this point recall that blood may be separated into cells and plasma and also that blood containing agglutinogen A or agglutinogen B has agglutinins in its plasma. The agglutinin Rh (Rh factor or Rh agglutinogen) differs from agglutinogen A and agglutinogen B in that there are no naturally occurring agglutinins in its plasma. The Rh agglutinins may be produced however by an Rh negative person receiving Rh positive blood. The production of the agglutinins is the body's reaction against the introduction of the foreign agglutinogens. When the Rh agglutinins are formed they can react with the Rh agglutinogens and cause clumping and hemolysis of the red cells. Such conditions may be met in repeated transfusions and pregnancy. A discussion of each situation follows.

When a patient with Rh negative blood is given a transfusion with Rh positive blood Rh agglutinins are produced in the patient's plasma. Repeated transfusions of this nature increase the strength or titer of the Rh agglutinins. If

of the donor's cells. The result may be fatal. Therefore in the transfusion of blood the red cell agglutinogens entering the patient must not meet similar agglutinins.

Since group O blood has no agglutinogens in its red cells there is no danger of its meeting similar agglutinins in the patient. It is therefore called the universal donor. On the other hand because group AB blood contains no agglutinins in its plasma it can not agglutinate a donor's incoming cells. Consequently it is called the universal recipient.

It is extremely important that the student grasp the above concepts. A review of the discussion may be obtained by a careful study of Table 17.

Table 17 —Compatible Donors for the Four Major Blood Groups

Donor's Blood Group		Agglutinogens in Donor's Red Cells	Agglutinins in Patient's Plasma	Patient's Blood Group
Universal Donor	A	A	→ b	A
	B	B	→ a	B
	O	None	→ a	B
	O	None	→ b	A
	O	None	→ ab	O
	O	None	→ none	AB
	A	A	→ none	AB
	B	B	→ none	AB
	AB	AB	→ none	AB

Universal
Recipient

Agglutinogens M N and MN

The presence of agglutinogen M agglutinogen N and agglutinogen MN (both M and N) have recently been discovered in human blood. Every individual in addition to belonging to one of the four major blood groups possesses agglutinogen M N or MN. These agglutinogens differ from agglutinogen A and agglutinogen B in that they have no corresponding agglutinins in and in their plasma. Since the presence of agglutinins is necessary for agglutination to take place the newly discovered agglutinogens are never responsible for the clumping of red cells. Consequently they are of no concern in blood transfusions. However they

in the blood alone determines whether a person is Rh positive or Rh negative. Consequently in routine laboratory work tests are made only for the Rh₀ factor. Since the various subdivisions of the Rh factor are not of clinical significance they will not be discussed in detail. For further information the interested student is referred to the current literature in the field and the present day research papers of Wiener, Fisher, Race and others.

The Subgroups

Research workers have recently found that agglutininogen A exists in two forms A₁ and A₂. This means that group A blood is divided into subgroup A₁ and subgroup A₂. Further investigation revealed the fact that 80% of the people typed as group A really belong to subgroup A₁ and the remaining 20% belong to subgroup A₂. This discovery also divides group AB blood into subgroup A₁B and subgroup A₂B.

It so happens that agglutinogens A₁ and A₂ are so closely related that they are of little concern in the transfusion of blood. Thus group A₁ blood may be given to a group A patient and group A₁B blood may be given to a group A₂B individual. However their significance and chief danger lies in the fact that agglutininogen A₂ has a weak agglutinating power. Consequently when group A₂ blood is typed the agglutinogens in the red cells may be so weak that the cells fail to agglutinate. Such blood would then erroneously be typed as group O. Also if agglutininogen A₂ were too weak to react A B blood would be mistakenly typed as group B. These typing errors however are usually eliminated by using group A typing serum of a very high titer which contains both agglutininogen A₁ and agglutininogen A₂. The crossmatch prior to a transfusion also serves to detect any such typing errors.

Since the subgroups of group A and group AB blood are of little concern in blood transfusions they are not determined routinely by the clinical laboratory. If it is desirable to find

the titer becomes sufficiently high further transfusion with Rh positive blood will bring about a reaction between the patient's newly formed Rh agglutinins and the donor's incoming Rh agglutinogens. The reaction causes the agglutination and hemolysis of the red cells entering the patient. The result may be fatal. Therefore before a transfusion the patient's blood is tested for the presence of the Rh factor. The Rh positive patients are given Rh positive blood and the Rh negative individuals are given Rh negative blood. This eliminates transfusion reactions which were formerly due to the Rh factor and writes another brilliant page in medical research.

When an Rh negative woman is carrying an Rh positive fetus* the fetus's blood may mingle (possibly through a tear in the placenta) with the mother's blood. The Rh agglutinogens in the fetus's red cells cause the production of Rh agglutinins in the mother's plasma. These newly formed agglutinins are then carried into the fetus via the circulatory system. A steady stream of Rh agglutinins from the mother pours into the fetus. This increases the strength or titer of these foreign Rh agglutinins in the fetus's plasma. Finally a reaction takes place within the fetus between the Rh agglutinogens in its red cells and the Rh agglutinins which came from the mother. This reaction results in the agglutination and hemolysis of the fetus's red cells. The infant is then born with a severe and often fatal anemia (erythroblastosis fetalis). The treatment in mild cases is to give immediate transfusions with Rh negative blood and in severe cases to drain the infant's entire blood supply and simultaneously replace it with Rh negative blood.

In recent years several varieties of the Rh factor have been discovered. These are classified as Rh₁, Rh₂, etc. with the original Rh factor receiving the label Rh₀. The Rh₂ agglutinogen has a much stronger agglutinating power than the other Rh agglutinogens. Because of this greater antigenicity it is the most important for its presence or absence.

In the vast majority of cases where the following reaction occurs the mother is Rh negative and the fetus is Rh positive. However cases have been recorded where the reverse is true the mother being Rh positive and the fetus being Rh negative.

Slide Method for ABO Grouping

A saline cell suspension may be used in place of the ovalated blood mentioned below. If the saline cell suspension is used cover the preparation with a Petri dish and allow 30 minutes to elapse before making the reading.

- 1 Get a glass slide and draw a line through the center with a wax pencil. Label one square A and the other B. Thus



- 2 Place 2 drops of ovalated blood in each square.
- 3 To the blood in square A add 1 drop of group A (anti B) typing serum. Mix with an applicator stick.
- 4 To the blood in square B add 1 drop of group B (anti A) typing serum. Mix with an applicator stick.
- 5 Examine for clumping of the cells. If there is clumping in square B and none in square A the blood belongs to group A. If there is clumping in square A and none in square B the blood belongs to group B. Clumping in both squares places the blood in group AB whereas no clumping in either square indicates group O. These results are illustrated in Figure 58.

Test Tube Method for ABO Grouping

- 1 Get two small test tubes. Write the patient's name on the tubes and label one tube A and the other B. Place 2 drops of the patient's cell suspension in each tube.

the subgroups a serum called Absorbed B serum is used. Certain agglutinins have been absorbed from this serum so that it will clump cells containing agglutininogen A_1 but will not clump cells containing agglutininogen A_2 . Thus the cells of group A_1 and group A_1B will be agglutinated by Absorbed B serum whereas the cells of group A and group A_2B will not be agglutinated.

✓ ABO GROUPING

The 4 major blood groups are commonly referred to as the ABO group. And the procedure for finding a person's specific group is known as ABO grouping. This section discusses (1) the preparation of blood for ABO grouping (2) the slide method for ABO grouping and (3) the test tube method for ABO grouping.

Preparation of Blood for ABO Grouping

Either oxalated blood or a cell suspension may be used for ABO grouping. If oxalated blood is employed the results may be read immediately. If a cell suspension is used the cells are less concentrated and the reaction may require about 30 minutes.

If oxalated blood is to be used get an oxalated tube and materials for a venipuncture. Write the patient's name on the oxalated tube. Make a venipuncture withdraw about 3 cc of blood and transfer to the tube. Place the cork in the mouth of the tube and invert about 8 to 10 times to dissolve the oxalate.

If a saline cell suspension is to be used get a Kahn tube and materials for a finger puncture. Write the patient's name on the Kahn tube and place about 6 cc of normal saline in the tube. Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop of blood and add a few drops to the tube. Place a cork in the mouth of the tube and invert several times in order to mix. The cell suspension should not be too dilute or too concentrated. When a test tube containing a properly made cell suspension is held directly over printed material the print should be barely discernible.

Slide Method for ABO Grouping

A saline cell suspension may be used in place of the ovalated blood mentioned below. If the saline cell suspension is used cover the preparation with a Petri dish and allow 30 minutes to elapse before making the reading.

- 1 Get a glass slide and draw a line through the center with a wax pencil. Label one square A and the other B. Thus



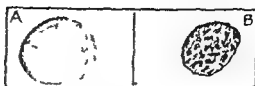
- 2 Place 2 drops of ovalated blood in each square.
- 3 To the blood in square A add 1 drop of group A (anti B) typing serum. Mix with an applicator stick.
- 4 To the blood in square B add 1 drop of group B (anti A) typing serum. Mix with an applicator stick.
- 5 Examine for clumping of the cells. If there is clumping in square B and none in square A the blood belongs to group A. If there is clumping in square A and none in square B the blood belongs to group B. Clumping in both squares places the blood in group AB whereas no clumping in either square indicates group O. These results are illustrated in Figure 58.

Test Tube Method for ABO Grouping

- 1 Get two small test tubes. Write the patient's name on the tubes and label one tube A and the other B. Place 2 drops of the patient's cell suspension in each tube.

Group A Serum
(Anti B)

Group B Serum
(Anti A)



Group A blood



Group B blood



Group AB blood



Group O blood

Fig. 28 - Clumping the patient's blood

- 2 To the cell suspension in tube A add 1 drop of group A (anti B) typing serum Shake gently to mix
- 3 To the cell suspension in tube B add 1 drop of group B (anti A) typing serum Shake gently to mix
- 4 Let the tubes stand at room temperature for 15 minutes
- 5 Centrifuge at *low* speed for 1 minute Re-suspend the cells by gently shaking the tubes
- 6 Examine for clumping If in doubt place on a glass slide and examine with the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope If there is clumping in tube B and none in tube A the blood belongs to group A If there is clumping in tube A and none in tube B the blood belongs to group B Clumping in both tubes places the blood in group AB whereas no clumping in either tube indicates group O blood These results are illustrated in Figure 58

✓ RH TYPING

The slide method and the test tube method are used to determine the Rh factor The slide method is much faster requiring only a few minutes whereas the test tube method takes about one half hour The slide method however is not as sensitive and may fail to pick up weak reactions Any negative results with this procedure are therefore checked with the more sensitive test tube method The procedures follow

Slide Method of Rh Typing

- 1 Warm a slide on the microscope lamp until it reaches approximately body temperature (37° C) (Many laboratories have a warm box which maintains the proper temperature)

- 2 Using either a medicine dropper or 2 applicator sticks held together between the thumb and forefinger place a large drop of oxalated blood on the left side of the slide (Fig 59) If desirable blood obtained from a finger puncture may be used in place of the oxalated blood

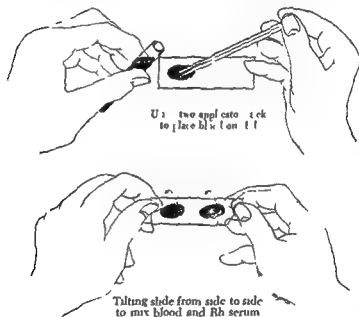


FIG 59 —Testing for the Rh factor

- 3 Spread the drop of blood so that it covers an oval area about the size of a nickel
- 4 Place another large drop of blood on the right side of the slide and spread in a similar manner This latter drop will be used as a control to compare with a positive test
- 5 Add a drop of anti Rh₀ serum (labelled for slide method) to the drop of blood on the

left side. Add nothing to the drop on the right side.

- 6 Tilt the slide from side to side to mix the blood and serum and at the same time look for a fine granular clumping of the cells (Fig. 59). If clumping is going to take place it occurs within 1 to 4 minutes. Do not confuse true granular clumping with a false coarse clumping which occurs when blood begins to dry up (Fig. 60).



Rh positive



Rh negative



*False positive
(drying blood)*

FIG. 60.—Positive and negative tests for the Rh factor (slide method)

- 7 If clumping occurs record the test as Rh positive. If no clumping takes place record the test as Rh negative. Should the test be negative perform the more sensitive test tube method given below.

Test Tube Method of Rh Typing

- 1 Make a serum cell suspension as follows. To about 3 cc. of the patient's serum add 1 drop of the patient's blood. Mix. (The above cell suspension may also be obtained by gently shaking a test tube containing the patient's blood clot and serum. The suspension however should not be too concentrated a 2% suspension being most suitable.)
- 2 Place 2 drop of the above serum cell suspension in a small test tube.

- 3 Add 2 drops of anti Rh₀ typing serum (labelled for test tube method) Shake gently and place in a 37° C water bath for 30 minutes
- 4 Centrifuge it low speed for 1 minute
- 5 Resuspend the cells by gentle shaking transfer to a glass slide, and examine under the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope
- 6 If clumping is present record the test as Rh positive If clumping is absent record the test as Rh negative

✓CROSS MATCH

When an order comes into the laboratory to type and cross match blood for a transfusion the technician is entrusted with a task which may save a life Yet a single mistake in the procedure may cause incompatible blood to be given and the resulting hemolysis of cells might easily cost a life Consequently it is the duty of the technician to work with extreme diligence for he often bridges the gap between life and death

A cross match determines the compatibility of the donor's blood and the patient's blood It consists of two parts The first part is called the major side and the second part is called the minor side

The major side is used to test the compatibility of the donor's cells with the patient's serum This side is the most important for it contains the donor's red cell agglutinogens These agglutinogens the student will recall must not meet similar agglutinins in the patient If they do the red cells clump or agglutinate Any clumping of cells on the major side completely rules out the donor's blood

The minor side is used to test the compatibility of the donor's serum with the patient's cells This side contains the donor's serum agglutinins Upon entering the patient these agglutinins will be greatly diluted by the patient's blood Therefore their effect if any on the patient's red cell agglutinogens will be negligible Theoretically a slight clumping

on the minor side is permissible but in actual practice any such agglutination rules out the donor's blood.

The following pages first discuss the blood preparations required for a cross match and then give the actual procedure. Following the instructions the sources of error are listed and discussed. These sources of error should be thoroughly understood by the student.

Preparation for a Cross Match

Four blood preparations are needed for a cross match. They are listed below and the manner in which they are obtained or prepared follows:

- a* Donor's cell suspension
- b* Donor's serum
- c* Patient's cell suspension
- d* Patient's serum *

Donor's Cell Suspension and Serum

When blood is furnished by a blood bank, pilot tubes containing the donor's cell suspension and serum accompany the bottle of blood. If the blood is obtained from a donor without the aid of a blood bank, the cell suspension and serum are prepared when blood is withdrawn. The procedure for their preparation is carried out in the same manner as that given below for the patient.

Preparation of Patient's Cell Suspension

Write the patient's name on a Kahn tube and place about 6 cc. of normal saline in the tube. Add two drops of the patient's blood (either oxalated or whole blood) to the tube. Place a cork in the mouth of the tube and invert several times in order to mix. The cell suspension should not be too dilute or too concentrated. When the tube containing a

Some technicians use the patient's plasma rather than serum. Both are equally satisfactory. If plasma is to be used, obtain the patient's plasma in place of serum and substitute the word plasma for serum in the procedure.

properly made cell suspension is held directly over printed matter the print should be barely discernible.

Preparation of Patient's Serum

Get materials for a venipuncture and a Kahn tube. Label the tube with the patient's name. Withdraw about 5 cc of blood from the patient, transfer to the tube and allow to clot. Centrifuge. Pour off the serum into a test tube. Label the tube with the patient's name.

Procedure for a Cross Match

1. Get 6 Kahn tubes and write the patient's name on each tube. Label 3 tubes DC + PS. This stands for donor's cells plus patient's serum. It is the major side. Label the other 3 tubes PC + DS. This stands for patient's cells plus donor's serum and is the minor side. Arrange the 6 tubes in a rack as shown in Figure 61. Get the donor's cell suspension and serum and the patient's cell suspension and serum (preparation given above). Also set them in the rack as indicated in Figure 61.
2. To set up the major side:
Using 1 cc pipets place 0.1 cc of the donor's cell suspension in each of the 3 tubes labeled DC + PS. Add 0.1 cc of the patient's serum to each tube. Shake the tubes gently in order to mix.
3. To set up the minor side:
Using 1 cc pipets place 0.1 cc of the patient's cell suspension in each of the 3 tubes labelled PC + DS. Add 0.1 cc of the donor's serum to each tube. Shake gently in order to mix.
4. Place 1 tube from the major side and 1 tube from the minor side in the refrigerator. Place 1 tube from the major side and 1 tube from the minor side in a 37°C waterbath.

Let the 2 remaining tubes stand at room temperature

- 5 In 30 minutes (60 minutes for infants since they have a lower titer of agglutinins) centrifuge the tubes at *low* speed for 1 minute. Note the color of the fluid above the cells. A pink tinge indicates that hemolysis has taken place and consequently the bloods are incompatible. If the fluid above the cells is clear the cells must then be inspected.

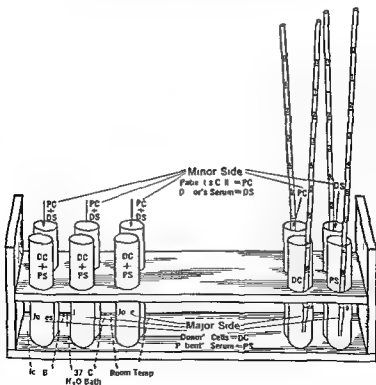
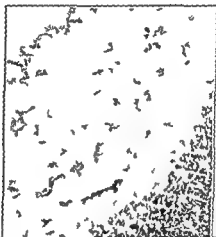


FIG. 61 —Set-up for a cross match

for agglutination. Gently shake the tubes to resuspend the cells and place the contents of each tube on a separate glass slide. Examine with the high dry (4 mm) objective of the microscope. Record any clumping.

A



B

C

FIG. 62.—Positive negative and false agglutination. A Positive agglutination. B Negative agglutination. C False agglutination and rouleaux formation. (Koller & Immunity and Biologic Therapy, courtesy of W. H. Saunders Co.)

(Fig. 62) being sure to designate the test tube involved. Make the report as follows:

6 Compatible bloods. No clumping in any of the 6 tubes.

Incompatible bloods. Clumping in any of the tubes which were placed at 37° C. temperature or stood at room temperature.

Doubtful reaction. If clumping occurs in the refrigerated tubes it indicates the presence of either cold agglutinins or autoagglutinins.

Both types of agglutinins react best at cold temperatures. Agglutinations of this nature are rare but should they occur consult the physician. He may reject the blood or simply order it to be given slowly, thus giving the blood a chance to warm up before entering the patient.

Sources of Error in Typing and Cross Matching Blood

It is very important that the student learn and thoroughly understand the following sources of error in typing and cross matching blood. These sources of error may serve the student in several ways. First they may be used as handy guideposts in carrying out the procedure. Second they may be used to help recognize the significant factors in the transfusion of blood. Incidentally they also make good examination questions.

1. *Typing and cross matching the wrong blood*

To illustrate: Suppose that you are drawing the blood for 2 typings and cross matchings and forget to label the tubes with the patient's name. You do the 2 typings, order the blood and get compatible cross matches. The blood is given and both patients have transfusion reactions (which may be fatal) because you failed to label the tubes and got the blood mixed up. This is perhaps the most serious mistake a technician can make since there is no way to pick up the error. Therefore always label the tubes with the patient's name.

2 *Making the saline cell suspension too weak or too concentrated*

If the cells are too far apart the agglutinating force may not be able to bring them together. If the cells are too close rouleaux formation (red cells bunched together like stacks of coins) may take place. This is commonly mistaken for agglutination. It may be corrected by diluting the cells and serum with a small drop of normal saline.

3 *The use of saline cell suspensions which have stood for several days*

When cell suspensions stand for long periods of time the cells lose their ability to become agglutinated. Cell suspensions should be made fresh for each typing and cross match.

4 *The use of weak or contaminated typing serums*

The commercial typing serums are made from pooled serums of high titer and usually can be relied upon to have a sufficiently high titer. Contamination can be prevented by putting nothing into the typing serum except the dropper which comes with the bottle.

5 *Interchanging the typing serums*

If the typing serums are interchanged group A blood would be typed as group B and vice versa. In order to guard against this some technicians place the typing serum bottles in a Petri dish and pour in liquid paraffin. When the paraffin hardens it fixes the bottles in position. This lessens the possibility of getting them mixed up.

6 *Failure to pipet the donor's and patient's serums and cells into the correct tubes*

This is a serious mistake since it is difficult to detect. It may be prevented by paying strict attention to the job and double checking each step.

7 *Failure to allow sufficient time for agglutination to take place*

In typing blood. The agglutinin A_2 in subgroups A_2 and A_2B has a weak agglutinating power and is slow to react.

Therefore if the typing is read too soon group A₁ blood may be mistaken for group O and group A₂B blood may be mistaken for group B

In cross matching blood . Infants usually have much weaker agglutinins than adults . Weak agglutinins require a longer period of time to react . If sufficient time is not allowed a weak reaction may not be detected and incompatible blood may be given

8 *Failure to give the blood that was cross matched*

In most hospitals a nurse calls for the blood and takes it to the ward to give to the patient . All bottles of blood may look the same to her . Make certain that she gets the blood that you cross matched

9 *Failure to perform the proper cross matches during multiple transfusions*

When a series of transfusions are to be given a patient two factors should be observed . First all bottles of blood which are to be given should be cross matched with each other . second each bottle should be cross matched with the patient just before it is given

COOMBS TEST

There are two Coombs tests ; the Direct Coombs and the Indirect Coombs

The Direct Coombs test is usually used to determine the presence or absence of blocking antibodies . These antibodies may coat the red cells of an infant suspected of having erythroblastosis fetalis . If the antibodies are present it increases the physician's suspicion that the infant may be an erythroblastotic baby . In such cases he may order an immediate exchange transfusion . This will remove the infant's blood before the hemolyzing red cells have an opportunity to do any serious damage

The Indirect Coombs test is also used to establish the presence or absence of antibodies . This test however examines the serum of a mother who gives birth to an infant

suspected of having erythroblastosis fetalis. If the antibodies are present the test is positive. This increases the possibility of an erythroblastotic baby.

The procedures for the Direct Coombs and the Indirect Coombs are given below.

Direct Coombs Test

1. Get a Kahn tube and add about 6 cc of normal (0.85%) saline. Get materials for a finger puncture.
2. Puncture the infant's big toe and add about 2 drops of blood to the saline tube. (Cord blood may also be used.) Invert the tube several times to mix.
3. Wash the above cells 3 times in the following manner. Centrifuge the cell suspension. Pour off the fluid. Add about 6 cc of normal saline. Mix.
4. After discarding the fluid from the third washing, remove as much saline as possible by allowing the tube to drain over a gauze pad for a few seconds.
5. By adding normal saline, adjust the concentration of cells so that you have about a 2% suspension. When a test tube containing a 2% suspension of cells is held directly over printed matter, the print is barely discernible.
6. Place 2 drops of the above 2% cell suspension in a small test tube.
7. Add 2 drops of the Coombs serum. Mix.
8. Let stand at room temperature for 15 minutes.
9. Centrifuge at low speed for 1 minute.
10. Resuspend the cells by gently shaking the tube and examine for clumping of cells. If you are in doubt regarding the clumping, place the cells on a glass slide and examine with the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope.

- 11 If the cells are clumped report the test as positive. If the cells are not clumped report the test as negative.
- 12 **NOTE** Some laboratories run the following controls:
 - (a) a negative control with group O Rh negative cells
 - (b) a positive control with group O Rh positive cells. These cells are first sensitized by adding 2 drops of diluted (1 to 3) anti Rh₀ slide test serum and incubating at 37° C. for one-half hour.

Indirect Coombs Test

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture and a Kahn tube.
- 2 Make a venipuncture on the patient with draw about 6 cc of blood and transfer to the Kahn tube.
- 3 Allow the blood to clot and centrifuge to obtain the serum.
- 4 Prepare a 2% normal saline suspension of selected test cells (washed group O Rh positive cells).
- 5 Place 2 drops of the above 2% suspension in a small test tube.
- 6 Add 2 drops of the patient's serum. Mix.
- 7 Place in a 37° C. water bath for 60 minutes.
- 8 Remove the tube from the water bath and wash the cells 3 times as follows: Add about 6 cc of normal saline mix centrifuge and pour off the fluid.
- 9 After the third washing allow the tube to drain in order to remove as much saline as possible.
- 10 Add 2 drops of Coombs serum to the cells in the bottom of the tube. Mix well.
- 11 Centrifuge at low speed for 1 minute.
- 12 Resuspend the cells by gently shaking the tube.

suspected of having erythroblastosis fetalis. If the antibodies are present the test is positive. This increases the possibility of an erythroblastic baby.

The procedures for the Direct Coombs and the Indirect Coombs are given below.

Direct Coombs Test

- 1 Get a Kahn tube and add about 6 cc of normal (0.85%) saline. Get materials for a finger puncture.
- 2 Puncture the infant's big toe and add about 2 drops of blood to the saline tube. (Cord blood may also be used.) Invert the tube several times to mix.
- 3 Wash the above cells 3 times in the following manner. Centrifuge the cell suspension. Pour off the fluid. Add about 6 cc of normal saline. Mix.
- 4 After discarding the fluid from the third washing, remove as much saline as possible by allowing the tube to drain over a gauze pad for a few seconds.
- 5 By adding normal saline, adjust the concentration of cells so that you have about a 2% suspension. When a test tube containing a 2% suspension of cells is held directly over printed matter the print is barely discernible.
- 6 Place 2 drops of the above 2% cell suspension in a small test tube.
- 7 Add 2 drops of the Coombs serum. Mix.
- 8 Let stand at room temperature for 15 minutes.
- 9 Centrifuge at low speed for 1 minute.
- 10 Resuspend the cells by gently shaking the tube and examine for clumping of cells. If you are in doubt regarding the clumping, place the cells on a glass slide and examine with the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope.

- 11 If the cells are clumped report the test as positive. If the cells are not clumped report the test as negative.
- 12 **NOTE** Some laboratories run the following controls:
 - (a) a negative control with group O Rh negative cells
 - (b) a positive control with group O Rh positive cells. These cells are first sensitized by adding 2 drops of diluted (1 to 3) anti Rh₀ slide test serum and incubating at 37° C for one half hour.

Indirect Coombs Test

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture and a Kahn tube
- 2 Make a venipuncture on the patient with draw about 6 cc of blood and transfer to the Kahn tube
- 3 Allow the blood to clot and centrifuge to obtain the serum
- 4 Prepare a 2% normal saline suspension of selected test cells (washed group O Rh positive cells)
- 5 Place 2 drops of the above 2% suspension in a small test tube
- 6 Add 2 drops of the patient's serum. Mix
- 7 Place in a 37° C water bath for 60 minutes
- 8 Remove the tube from the water bath and wash the cells 3 times as follows. Add about 6 cc of normal saline mix centrifuge and pour off the fluid
- 9 After the third washing allow the tube to drain in order to remove as much saline as possible
- 10 Add 2 drops of Coombs serum to the cells in the bottom of the tube. Mix well
- 11 Centrifuge at low speed for 1 minute
- 12 Resuspend the cells by gently shaking the tube

suspected of having erythroblastosis fetalis. If the antibodies are present the test is positive. This increases the possibility of an erythroblastic baby.

The procedures for the Direct Coombs and the Indirect Coombs are given below.

Direct Coombs Test

- 1 Get a Kahn tube and add about 6 cc of normal (0.85%) saline. (Get materials for a finger puncture.)
- 2 Puncture the infant's big toe and add about 2 drops of blood to the saline tube. (Cord blood may also be used.) Invert the tube several times to mix.
- 3 Wash the above cells 3 times in the following manner: Centrifuge the cell suspension. Pour off the fluid. Add about 6 cc of normal saline. Mix.
- 4 After discarding the fluid from the third washing, remove as much saline as possible by allowing the tube to drain over a gauze pad for a few seconds.
- 5 By adding normal saline, adjust the concentration of cells so that you have about a 2% suspension. When a test tube containing a 2% suspension of cells is held directly over printed matter, the print is barely discernible.
- 6 Place 2 drops of the above 2% cell suspension in a small test tube.
- 7 Add 2 drops of the Coombs serum. Mix.
- 8 Let stand at room temperature for 15 minutes.
- 9 Centrifuge at low speed for 1 minute.
- 10 Resuspend the cells by gently shaking the tube and examine for clumping of cells. If you are in doubt regarding the clumping, place the cells on a glass slide and examine with the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope.

- 5 Place 0.1 cc of normal (0.85%) saline in tubes 2 through 10
- 6 Place 0.1 cc of the patient's serum in tubes 1 and 2
- 7 Mix the serum and saline in tube 2 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 3
- 8 Mix the serum and saline in tube 3 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 4
- 9 Mix the serum and saline in tube 4 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 5. Continue this process of dilution through tube 10. After you have mixed tube 10 remove 0.1 cc from the tube and discard.
- 10 Get the fresh 2% saline cell suspension of male group O Rh positive blood
- 11 Add 2 drops of the above 2% cell suspension to each of the 10 tubes. Mix gently. (Save the cell suspension as it is used in step 18.)
- 12 Place the rack in a 37°C incubator or water bath for 1 hour or longer.
- 13 Get 10 more Kahn tubes. Number them 1 to 10 and place in another test tube rack. Label this rack *For albumin agglutinins*.
- 14 Place 0.1 cc of pooled male serum in tubes 2 through 10.
- 15 Place 0.1 cc of the patient's serum in tubes 1 and 2.
- 16 Mix the contents of tube 2 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 3.
- 17 Mix the contents of tube 3 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 4. Continue this dilution process through tube 10. After you have mixed tube 10 remove 0.1 cc and discard.
- 18 Get the fresh 2% saline suspension of male group O Rh positive cells. Centrifuge. Discard the fluid and allow the tube to drain. To the cells in the bottom of the tube add 4 cc of bovine albumin. Mix well.
- 19 Add 2 drops of the above albumin suspended cells to each of the 10 tubes. Mix gently.

- 13 Examine for clumping If you are in doubt regarding the clumping place the cells on a glass slide and examine with the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope
- 14 If clumping is present report the test as positive If clumping is absent report the test as negative
- 15 NOTE Some laboratories run positive and negative controls for the above test For detailed instructions consult the literature accompanying your bottle of Coombs serum

RH TITER

If a pregnant woman is Rh negative and her husband is Rh positive there is a possibility that she may bear an erythroblastotic baby In some cases the strength of Rh antibodies in her serum increases this possibility The strength of Rh antibodies may be determined by an Rh titer The test is performed as indicated below

The following solutions and reagents are needed for this test normal (0.85%) saline fresh male group O Rh positive blood pooled male serum and bovine albumin The male blood and serum may be obtained from students or patients The bovine albumin may be obtained from your local medical supply house

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture and a Kahn tube
- 2 Make a venipuncture on the patient with draw about 6 cc of blood and transfer to the Kahn tube
- 3 Allow the blood to clot and centrifuge to obtain the serum Obtain fresh male group O Rh positive blood and make a 2% saline cell suspension
- 4 Get 10 Kahn tubes Number the tubes 1 to 10 and place in a test tube rack Label the rack For Saline Agglutination

- 5 Place 0.1 cc of normal (0.8%) saline in tubes 2 through 10
- 6 Place 0.1 cc of the patient's serum in tubes 1 and 2
- 7 Mix the serum and saline in tube 2 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 3
- 8 Mix the serum and saline in tube 3 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 4
- 9 Mix the serum and saline in tube 4 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 5. Continue this process of dilution through tube 10. After you have mixed tube 10 remove 0.1 cc from the tube and discard
- 10 Get the fresh 2% saline cell suspension of male group O Rh positive blood
- 11 Add 2 drops of the above 2% cell suspension to each of the 10 tubes. Mix gently. (Save the cell suspension as it is used in step 18.)
- 12 Place the rack in a 37°C incubator or water bath for 1 hour or longer
- 13 Get 10 more Kahn tubes. Number them 1 to 10 and place in another test tube rack. Label this rack *For Albumin Agglutinins*
- 14 Place 0.1 cc of pooled male serum in tubes 2 through 10
- 15 Place 0.1 cc of the patient's serum in tubes 1 and 2
- 16 Mix the contents of tube 2 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 3
- 17 Mix the contents of tube 3 and transfer 0.1 cc to tube 4. Continue this dilution process through tube 10. After you have mixed tube 10 remove 0.1 cc and discard
- 18 Get the fresh 2% saline suspension of male group O Rh positive cells. Centrifuge. Discard the fluid and allow the tube to drain. To the cells in the bottom of the tube add 4 cc of bovine albumin. Mix well
- 19 Add 2 drops of the above albumin suspended cells to each of the 10 tubes. Mix gently

- 20 Place in a 37° C incubator or water bath for 1 hour
- 21 After the hour has elapsed remove the rack labelled *For Saline Agglutinins* from the incubator. Also remove the rack labelled *For Albumin Agglutinins* from the incubator. Shake the racks gently in order to mix the contents of the tubes.
- 22 Begin with tube 1 of each set of tubes and examine for clumping in the following manner. Place the contents of each tube on a glass slide and observe under the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope.
- 23 Record the tubes which show clumping.
- 24 Report the tube numbers and the highest dilution which show clumping (see Table 1b).

Table 1b — Dilutions of Tubes in Rh Titer

<i>Tube Number</i>	<i>Dilution</i>
1	1 1
2	1 2
3	1 4
4	1 8
5	1 16
6	1 32
7	1 64
8	1 128
9	1 256
10	1 512

25 A sample report is given below.

REPORT OF RH TITER

For Saline Agglutinins	Clumping in tubes 1 through 5 Highest dilution is 1 16
For Albumin Agglutinins	No clumping found

Chapter 6

Miscellaneous Tests

This chapter presents those tests which do not fit into the previous categories. The examinations discussed are listed below.

LF Cells

Eosinophil Count

Spinal Cell Count

Malaria Parasites

Bone Marrow Smears

Heterophile Antibody Test

LE CELLS

Information Significant to the Student

Lupus erythematosus is a disease of the skin which is characterized by eruptions on the surface of the body. Its cause is unknown. The disease is sometimes difficult to diagnose. A recent laboratory test however has come to the aid of the physician. This test consists of examining the blood or bone marrow for LE cells. The procedure is given below.

The LE cell derives its name from the disease—lupus erythematosus. The cell consists of a mass of nuclear material surrounded by one or more segmented cells (Fig. 63).

It is believed by some that the formation of the cell takes place in two stages. First there is an abnormal substance in the plasma. This substance breaks down the cytoplasm of lymphocytes and leaves a distorted nucleus. Second this distorted nucleus is engulfed or phagocytized by segmented cells.

- 20 Place in a 37° C incubator or water bath for 1 hour
- 21 After the hour has elapsed remove the rack labelled *For Saline Agglutinins* from the incubator. Also remove the rack labelled *For Albumin Agglutinins* from the incubator. Shake the racks gently in order to mix the contents of the tubes.
- 22 Begin with tube 1 of each set of tubes and examine for clumping in the following manner. Place the contents of each tube on a glass slide and observe under the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope.
- 23 Record the tubes which show clumping.
- 24 Report the tube numbers and the highest dilution which show clumping (see Table 18).

Table 18 — Dilutions of Tubes in Rh Titer

<i>Tube Number</i>	<i>Dilution</i>
1	1 1
2	1 2
3	1 4
4	1 8
5	1 16
6	1 32
7	1 64
8	1 128
9	1 256
10	1 512

2) A sample report is given below

REPORT OF RH TITER

For Saline Agglutinins	Clumping in tubes 1 through 5
	Highest dilution is 1 16
For Albumin Agglutinins	No clumping found

- 4 Pour off and discard the serum
- 5 Using 2 applicator sticks *thoroughly* mash up the blood clot (As an alternate procedure the clot may be passed through a #40 wire mesh)
- 6 Discard the clot and centrifuge the bloody serum
- 7 Transfer 1 cc of the top layer of cells to a Wintrobe hematocrit tube
- 8 Centrifuge for 10 minutes
- 9 Using a fine capillary pipet remove the serum which is above the thin white layer of cells. Discard this serum
- 10 Using the capillary pipet carefully transfer the thin white layer of cells to a clean glass slide
- 11 Make blood smears in the usual manner. Allow the smears to dry
- 12 Stain with Wright's stain
- 13 Examine with the oil immersion objective of the microscope. The I F cell is illustrated in Fig. 63
- 14 Report the presence or absence of I F cells making sure to examine the slide thoroughly

EOSINOPHIL COUNT →

Information Significant to the Student

The eosinophil count is used in diagnosing diseases of the adrenal gland. For example when a healthy person is given an injection of the hormone ACTH the eosinophil count drops below the normal values of 150 to 300 cells per cubic millimeter. In diseases of the adrenal gland however the count remains the same.

Procedure for the Eosinophil Count

The eosinophil count is made in a manner somewhat similar to a white cell count. In order to increase the accuracy

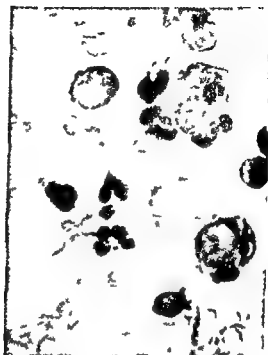


FIG. 63 —Lupus Erythematosus (I F) Cells The cluster in the upper right hand corner is a typical rosette with an L F body in the center The cell containing a body in the lower right hand corner is a tart cell which is not pathognomonic of lupus erythematosus Source of material bone marrow $\times 800$ From Gradwohl R B H *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis* 5th Edition courtesy of the C V Mosby Company)

Procedure for Detecting L III Cells

- 1 Get materials for a venipuncture and a Kahn tube
- 2 Make a venipuncture on the patient with draw about 5 cc of blood and transfer to the Kahn tube
- 3 Allow the blood to stand at room temperature for 2 hours (If a 37 C incubator is available place blood in incubator)

of 10.09. Multiplying the dilution correction factor of 10 by the volume correction factor of 10.09 gives us the figure 11.)

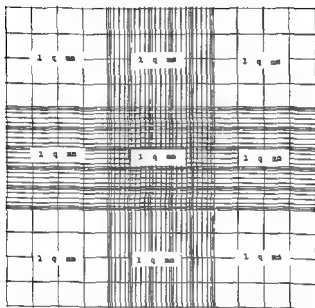


FIG 64 — Total ruled area to be counted in the eonophal count and epinal cell count. The total ruled area is 9 sq mm. The counting chamber is 0.1 mm deep. Therefore the total volume is $9 \times 0.1 = 0.9$ mm (Illustration courtesy of Bau ch & Lomb Co.)

11 Example of calculation

One side of the counting chamber had a count of 10. The other side had a count of 8. Therefore

$$10 + 8 = 18 \text{ total count}$$

And

$$18 \text{ divided by } 2 = 9 \text{ average count}$$

however some technicians fill 2 pipets make 2 separate counts and average the two

There are several diluting fluids which can be used for the eosinophil count. In the following procedure Tannen's diluting fluid is used. In place of this however any other eosinophil diluting fluid may be used.

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture a white cell pipet, and a bottle of Tannen's diluting fluid (preparation given in the Appendix on page 242)
- 2 Make a finger puncture wipe away the first drop and draw blood to the 10 mark. Now draw diluting fluid to the 110 mark
- 3 Let stand 15 minutes
- 4 Mix the contents of the pipet as you would for a white cell count
- 5 Discard the first 4 drops and load both sides of the counting chamber
- 6 Using the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope scan several fields and note that the eosinophils are red in color
- 7 Count the eosinophils in the *entire* ruled area on one side of the counting chamber. This will be the nine 1 sq. mm sections illustrated in Figure 64. Record the count
- 8 Now count the eosinophils in the *entire* ruled area on the other side of the counting chamber. Record the count
- 9 Add the counts from each side of the counting chamber to get the total count. Now divide the total count by 2 to get the average count
- 10 Multiply the average count by 11
(The figure 11 represents 2 correction factors. First the blood was diluted 1 in 10 and thus we have the dilution correction factor of 10. Second the cells were counted in 0.9 cubic millimeter and the report is to be given as the number in 1.0 cubic millimeter. Thus we have a volume correction factor

- 3 Using the low power (16 mm) objective count the cells in the *entire* ruled area. This will be the nine 1 sq mm sections illustrated in Figure 64 page 183
- 4 Calculations
By counting the cells in the entire ruled area you have counted the number in 0.9 cu mm. The report however is to be given as the number in 1.0 cu mm. Therefore multiply the number counted by 10/9 (or 10/9)
- Example
The number of cells counted in the entire ruled area was 9. Multiplying this by 10/9 we have
$$9 \times 10/9 = 10 \text{ cells per cu mm}$$
- 6 After the count is made the counting chamber should be soaked in alcohol to prevent contagion
- 7 NOTE After some experience a differential cell count may be made by examining the cells on the counting chamber

Differential Cell Count

If the total cell count is within the normal range of 0 to 10 there is no point in making a differential cell count. If however the count is elevated a differential cell count should be made.

The white cells usually found in spinal fluid are lymphocytes and segmented cells.

The lymphocytes usually outnumber the segmented cells in the following diseases: tuberculosis meningitis, epidemic encephalitis, anterior poliomyelitis and latent syphilis.

The segmented cells outnumber the lymphocytes in the following diseases: pneumococcus meningitis, influenzal meningitis, pyogenic meningitis and epidemic meningitis.

The procedure for the differential cell count follows

$$\begin{array}{rcll}
 \text{And} & & & \\
 \text{Average count} \times \text{correction} & = & \text{cosinophils} & \\
 & \text{factors} & \text{per cu mm} & \\
 9 & \times & 11 & = & 99
 \end{array}$$

SPINAL CELL COUNT

Information Significant to the Student

The cells found in spinal fluid are usually white cells. Sometimes however red cells produced by the puncture itself are seen. These may cause a slight increase in the count.

The normal values for the spinal cell count are 0 to 10 cells per cubic millimeter. Increased values such as 20 to 1000 cells may be found in meningitis, encephalitis, poliomyelitis and latent syphilis.

Procedure for the Spinal Cell Count

Since the cells disintegrate rapidly, the count should be made while the fluid is fresh—preferably within an hour after the withdrawal of fluid.

Spinal fluid often contains contagious material. Consequently the technician should take particular precautions in handling the specimens. In making transfers of the fluid it is perhaps a wise policy to use medicine droppers rather than pipets.

The spinal cell count consists of the total cell count and the differential cell count. The procedures follow.

Total Cell Count

1. In order to hemolyze any red cells that may be present, add a few drops of 10% acetic acid to about 1 cubic centimeter of the spinal fluid. Put a cork in the mouth of the tube and invert 8 to 10 times to mix.
2. Using a medicine dropper, transfer a small portion of this spinal fluid to a counting chamber which is generally used for counting blood cells.

PLATE V



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10



11



12



13



14



15



16



17



18



19



20



21



22



23



24



25



26



27



28

- 1 Centrifuge the spinal fluid and discard the supernatant fluid
- 2 Place a small drop of the sediment on a glass slide. Using another slide as a spreader spread the sediment over the slide as you would for a blood smear
- 3 Allow to dry
- 4 Stain with Wright's stain
- 5 Using the oil immersion objective of the microscope record the number of lymphocytes and segmented cells seen while counting 100 white cells
- 6 Report the percentage found
- 7 Example 40 lymphocytes and 60 segmented cells were recorded while counting 100 white cells. Therefore there are 40% lymphocytes and 60% segmented cells

LEGEND FOR PLATE V — *P. falciparum*

- 1 Very young ring form trophozoite
- 2 Double infection of single cell with young trophozoites one a marginal form the other signet ring form
- 3 4 Young trophozoites showing double chromatin dots
- 5 6 7 Developing trophozoite forms
- 8 Three medium trophozoites in one cell
- 9 Trophozoite showing pigment in a cell containing Maurer's spots
- 10 11 Two trophozoites in each of two cells showing variation of forms which they may assume
- 12 Almost mature trophozoite showing haze of pigment throughout cytoplasm Maurer's spots in the cell
- 13 Aestivo autumnal slender forms
- 14 Mature trophozoite showing clumped pigment
- 15 Parasites in the process of initial chromatin division
- 16 17 18 19 Various phases of the development of the schizont ("presegmented schizonts")
- 20 Mature schizont
- 21 22 23 24 Successive forms in the development of the gametocyte — usually not found in the peripheral circulation
- 25 Immature macrogametocyte
- 26 Mature macrogametocyte
- 27 Immature microgametocyte
- 28 Mature microgametocyte

Reproduced with permission from *The Manual for the Microscopical Diagnosis of Malaria* in *Man* National Institute of Health Bulletin No 180 (By Anne Wilcox)

PLATE VI



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9



10



11



12



13



14



15



16



17



18



19



20



21



22



23



24

LEGEND FOR PLATE VI — *P. vivax*

- 1 Normal sized red cell with marginal ring form trophozoite
- 2 Young signet ring form trophozoite in a microcyte
- 3 Slightly older ring form trophozoite in red cell showing faint stippling
- 4 Polychromatophilic red cell containing young tertian parasite with pseudopodia
- 5 Ring form trophozoite showing pigment in cytoplasm in an enlarged cell containing Schuffner's stippling
- 6 7 Very tenuous medium trophozoite forms
- 8 Three ameboid trophozoites with fused cytoplasm
- 9 11 12 13 Older ameboid trophozoites in process of development
- 10 Two ameboid trophozoites in one cell
- 14 Mature trophozoite
- 15 Mature trophozoite with chromatin apparently in process of division
- 16 17 18 19 Schizonts showing progressive steps in division (pre-segmenting schizonts)
- 20 Mature schizont
- 21 22 Developing gametocyte
- 23 Mature microgametocyte
- 24 Mature macrogametocyte

Schuffner's stippling does not appear in all cell containing the growing and older of *P. vivax* it would be indicated by the picture but it can be found with any stage from the fairly young ring form onward.

Reproduced with permission from the Manual for the Microscopist, Diagnosis of Malaria in Man, National Institute of Health Bulletin No. 150 (By Ann & Wicks)

1
2
3

4
5

6
7

8
9

10

11
12

13
14

15
16

17

18

19

20



21

22

23

24



25

26

27

28



29

30

31

32



33

34

35

LEGEND FOR PLATE VII—*P. malarix*

- 1 Young ring form trophozoite of quartan malaria
- 2 3 4 Young trophozoite forms of the parasite showing gradual increase of chromatin and cytoplasm
- 5 Developing ring form trophozoite showing pigment granule
- 6 Early band form trophozoite—elongated chromatin, some pigment apparent
- 7 8 9 10 11 12 Six forms which the developing trophozoite of quartan malaria takes
- 13 14 Mature trophozoite—one band form
- 15 16 17 18 19 Phases in the development of the schizont (pigmenting schizont)
- 20 Mature schizont
- 21 Immature microgametocyte
- 22 Immature macrogametocyte
- 23 Mature macrogametocyte
- 24 Mature microgametocyte

Reproduced with permission from the Manual for the Microscopical Diagnosis of Malaria in Man, National Institute of Health Bulletin No. 180 (By Anne Wilcox)

MALARIA PARASITES

Information Significant to the Student

Malaria is a parasitic disease which is transmitted to man by means of a mosquito. The parasites live in the blood stream and go through a stage of development which is known as schizogony—meaning sexless. They repay their host—man—by entering his red cells and causing hemolysis. This produces a toxemia which is accompanied by chills and fever. The treatment consists of administering drugs that are injurious to the parasite.

The diagnosis of malaria depends largely upon finding the parasites in the blood stream. There are 3 main species of the parasite: *Plasmodium vivax*, *Plasmodium malarie* and *Plasmodium falciparum*. These species are illustrated in Plates V, VI and VII.

Examination for Malaria Parasites

If the patient is not having an attack, it is difficult to detect malaria parasites. Consequently, it is strongly urged that the patient be in the chills and fever stage at the time the blood is withdrawn.

There are two methods of examination for malaria parasites: the thin smear method and the thick smear method.

The thin smear method consists of making a blood smear in the usual manner, staining it with Wright's stain, and examining the red cells for parasites. This method is recommended for beginners.

The thick smear method concentrates the cells and thus makes it possible to examine more cells in a shorter period of time. This procedure consists of placing a drop of blood on a slide, staining it in such a manner that the red cells are hemolyzed, and then examining the slide for parasites. This method is recommended for those with previous experience.

The procedures for the thin smear method and the thick smear method are given below.

Thin Smear Method

1. Get materials for a finger puncture and a few glass slides.

- 7 Stain for 30 minutes
- 8 Remove from staining dish and dip in buffer solution to rinse
- 9 Dry in air
- 10 Using the oil immersion objective examine for malaria parasites. The red cells of course will be hemolyzed. But the malaria parasites if present will be more concentrated and will stand out much better than in the thin smear method
- 11 Report the presence or absence of malaria parasites

BONE MARROW SMEARS

Information Significant to the Student

The bone marrow is the site of the cell factories. Here the white cells, red cells, and platelets are being manufactured for their entrance into the blood stream. If the mechanics of manufacture are faulty, some on the spot information may be necessary. This is furnished by a study of bone marrow smears.

Bone marrow smears are of particular interest in the following diseases: aplastic anemia, pernicious anemia, leukemia, multiple myeloma, malignant neutropenia, Gaucher's disease, thrombocytopenic purpura, and metastases from carcinoma.

The role played by the average technician consists of assisting the physician making the smears and staining the slides. Some technicians with more advanced training may be allowed to evaluate their preparations.

Preparation of Bone Marrow Smears

The equipment for the bone marrow puncture is furnished by the physician. The technician furnishes about 10 extra clean glass slides and materials for a finger puncture.

The physician prepares the patient, makes a puncture of the bone (usually the tibia) and withdraws about 0.3 cc of bone marrow. This is passed to the technician who should proceed as follows:

- 2 Make a finger puncture on the patient
- 3 Prepare two blood smears as you would for a differential white cell count. Take care however to see that there is a definite thin portion to the smears. This is necessary because you will be examining individual red cells and they must be spread out.
- 4 Select the best smear and stain with Wright's stain.
- 5 Examine with the oil immersion objective of the microscope. Malaria parasites are illustrated in Plates V, VI and VII. The student should guard against mistaking platelets for parasites. Mistaking platelets for parasites is a frequent source of error for the beginner.
- 6 If parasites are present make the report as follows: Malaria parasites present. If parasites are not found after a 15 minute search make the report as follows: No malaria parasites seen.

Thick Smear Method

- 1 Get materials for a finger puncture and a few glass slide
- 2 Make a finger puncture on the patient
- 3 Place a large drop of blood on a glass slide using the corner of another slide spread the blood around so that it covers an area about the size of a dime.
- 4 Allow to dry.
- 5 Make a fresh batch of Giemsa stain by placing 2 cc of the stock Giemsa stain in a container and adding 50 cc of buffer solution.
(Directions for preparing the stock Giemsa stain and buffer solution come with the bottle of Giemsa stain.)
- 6 Place the thick smear in a vertical position in a staining dish. Cover with the fresh batch of Giemsa stain.

PLATE VIII



NORMAL BLOOD MARROW

Myeloid-erythroid ratio 3 or 4 to 1

From Autopsied Hematologic Section of The Armour Laboratories

- 1 Place a small amount of bone marrow on a glass slide. Make a smear as you would for a blood smear.
- 2 Make about 5 more smears.
- 3 Label the smears with the patient's name and date.
- 4 Make a finger puncture and prepare 2 blood smears for a differential white cell count. Label the smears with the patient's name and date. These smears are taken for the purpose of correlating the findings in the bone marrow with the findings in the circulating blood.
- 5 Allow the blood and bone marrow smears to dry.
- 6 Stain with Wright's stain.
- 7 Refer the smears to the physician for evaluation and diagnosis.

Table 19—Normal Values for Bone Marrow Smears

<i>Cell</i>	<i>Normal Values in Per Cent</i>
WHITE CELLS	
Myeloblasts	0 to 5
Progranulocytes	2 to 8
Neutrophilic myelocytes	4 to 10
Neutrophilic metamyelocyte	5 to 20
Neutrophilic band cell	10 to 30
Neutrophilic segmented cell	" to 30
Eosinophilic cells	1 to 4
Basophilic cells	0 to 1
Lymphocytes	5 to 15
Monocytes	0 to 5
Plasmaocytes	0 to 1
RED CELLS	
Rubriblasts	0 to 1
Proerythrocytes	1 to 4
Erythrocytes	3 to 10
Metarubricytes	5 to 2
PLATELETS	
Megakaryocytes	0 to 3

- 8 The normal values for a differential cell count of the bone marrow are given in Table 19. An illustration of normal bone marrow smears is given in Plate VIII.

HETEROPHILE ANTIBODY TEST

Information Significant to the Student

This is a test for infectious mononucleosis. In this disease the serum contains an antibody which will clump the red cells of sheep. Such an antibody is called a heterophile antibody.

If the heterophile antibody is present, however, it does not necessarily mean that the patient has infectious mononucleosis. This antibody is also present in people who have serum sickness and people who have recently received horse serum as an antitoxin.

In order to differentiate between the above diseases, the heterophile antibody test is divided into two phases: The Presumptive Test and the Differential Test.

The Presumptive Test is run on all suspected cases. If this is negative, no further test is necessary. If this is positive, however, the Differential Test is run.

Procedure for the Heterophile Antibody Test

The procedure for the Presumptive Test and the Differential Test are given below.

Presumptive Test

The reagents needed are normal (0.85%) saline and sheep cells. The latter may be obtained through your local medical supply house.

1. Get materials for a venipuncture and a test tube. Make a venipuncture, withdraw about 3 cc of blood, and transfer to the test tube. Allow to clot and centrifuge to obtain the serum.

- 10 Using Table 20 report the test tube numbers and titers (dilution of serum) which show any clumping of cells. For example if there is clumping in tubes 1, 2, and 3 make the report as follows

Report of Presumptive Test

Clumping in tubes	#1	#2	#3
Clumping in titers	1:7	1:14	1:28

- 11 In infectious mononucleosis there is usually clumping in at least the first 5 tubes that is through titer 1:112. If there is clumping in these 5 tubes the following Differential Test should be run.
- 12 NOTE: It should be mentioned that the heterophile antibodies are not present throughout the course of infectious mononucleosis. Consequently if the clinical symptoms persist the heterophile antibody test should be repeated in a week or ten days.

Table 20 —Serum Dilutions in the Heterophile Antibody Test

Test Tube Number	Titer (Dilution of Serum)
1	1:4
2	1:14
3	1:3
4	1:56
5	1:112
6	1:224
7	1:448
8	1:896
9	1:1792
10	1:3584
11	1:7168

- 2 Inactivate the serum at 56 C for 30 minutes
- 3 Get 12 small test tubes and a test tube rack. Label the tubes 1 to 12 and place in the rack. Mark the last tube *Control*
- 4 Place 0.40 cc of normal saline in test tube number 1 and 0.20 cc in the remaining tubes
- 5 Make a serial dilution of the serum and normal saline as follows. Add 0.1 cc of the inactivated serum to tube 1. Mix the contents of tube 1 and transfer 0.2 cc of the mixture to tube 2. Mix the contents of tube 2 and transfer 0.2 cc of the mixture to tube 3. Continue this dilution process through tube 11 adding nothing to tube 12 (the control). Now remove 0.20 cc from tube 11 and discard
- 6 Prepare a 2% saline suspension of the sheep cells as follows. Mix the sheep cells by inverting the container. Remove 0.1 cc of the cells from the container. Place in a test tube. Wash the cells 3 times by adding about 0.5 cc of normal saline, centrifuging and pouring off the saline. After the 3rd washing add 5 cc of normal saline. Mix gently
- 7 Add 0.1 cc of the above saline suspension of sheep cells to each of the 12 tubes. Mix gently. (Save the suspension of sheep cells as it will be used if the Differential Test is necessary.)
- 8 Let the tubes stand at room temperature for 2 hours
- 9 Gently shake the tubes to mix. Place the contents of tube 1 on a glass slide. Using the low power (10 mm) objective of the microscope examine for clumping. In a similar manner examine the remaining tubes for clumping. Record your results. There should of course be no clumping in the control tube (number 12)

- 10 Using Table 20 report the test tube numbers and titers (dilution of serum) which show any clumping of cells. For example if there is clumping in tubes 1, 2, and 3 make the report as follows

Report of Presumptive Test

Clumping in tubes	#1	#2	#3
Clumping in titers	1:7	1:14	1:28

- 11 In infectious mononucleosis there is usually clumping in at least the first 5 tubes that is through titer 1:112. If there is clumping in these 5 tubes the following Differential Test should be run.
- 12 **Note.** It should be mentioned that the heterophile antibodies are not present throughout the course of infectious mononucleosis. Consequently if the clinical symptoms persist the heterophile antibody test should be repeated in a week or ten days.

Table 20 —Serum Dilutions in the Heterophile Antibody Test

Test Tube Number	Titer (Dilution of Serum)
1	1:7
2	1:14
3	1:28
4	1:56
5	1:112
6	1:224
7	1:448
8	1:896
9	1:1,792
10	1:3,584
11	1:7,168

Differential Test

It has been found that guinea pig kidney antigen will absorb the antibodies in the serum of the following: (1) people who are normal (2) people who have serum sickness and (3) people who have recently received an injection of horse serum. This guinea pig kidney antigen however will not absorb the antibodies in the serum of people with infectious mononucleosis. Consequently the antigen can be used to distinguish between people who do *not* have infectious mononucleosis and people who do have infectious mononucleosis.

The following reagents are needed for the Differential Test: normal (0.85%) saline, sheep cells and guinea pig kidney antigen. The sheep cells and antigen may be obtained through your local medical supply house.

- 1 Get 10 test tubes and a test tube rack. Number the tubes 1 to 10 and place in the rack.
- 2 Pipet 0.2 cc of normal saline into tubes 2 through 10.
- 3 Shake the guinea pig kidney antigen in order to mix.
- 4 Place 1.0 cc of the antigen in a small test tube.
- 5 Add 0.2 cc of the patient's inactivated serum.
- 6 Mix well and allow to stand 3 minutes.
- 7 Centrifuge. The supernatant fluid will contain the absorbed serum.
- 8 Carefully pipet off at least 0.5 cc of the supernatant fluid. Place in a small test tube.
- 9 Pipet 0.2 cc of the above supernatant fluid into tube 1. Also pipet 0.2 cc into tube 2.
- 10 Mix the contents of tube 2 and transfer 0.2 cc to tube 3.
- 11 Mix the contents of tube 3 and transfer 0.2 cc to tube 4.
- 12 Continue the above dilution process through tube 10. Now remove 0.2 cc from tube 10 and discard.

- 13 To each tube add 0.1 cc of the 2% saline suspension of sheep cells
- 14 Gently shake the test tube rack in order to mix
- 15 Let stand for 2 hours at room temperature
- 16 Gently shake the tubes to mix. Place the contents of tube 1 on a glass slide. Using the low power (16 mm) objective of the microscope examine for clumping. In a similar manner examine the remaining tubes for clumping. Record your results.
- 17 Using Table 20 report the test tube numbers and titers which show clumping of cells. For example if there is clumping in the first 3 tubes make the report as follows

Report of Differential Test

Clumping in tubes	#1	#2	#3
Clumping in titers	1 7	1 14	1 28

- 18 In infectious mononucleosis clumping occurs in at least the first 3 tubes that is through titer 1 28.
- 19 NOTE The above test may be confirmed by another absorption test with beef cell antigen. This test however is seldom necessary. It is run exactly like the above test except that the guinea pig kidney antigen is replaced by beef cell antigen. The beef cell antigen will absorb the antibodies in the serum of people with infectious mononucleosis, serum sickness and horse serum sensitization. This serum will then be unable to clump the sheep cells.

Chapter 7

Blood Picture in Various Blood Diseases

THE information which the technician gathers for the physician forms a pattern which is known as the patient's blood picture. It is extremely useful in diagnosis. For example, if the physician has a diagnostic problem and speculation points to a disease of the blood, a likeness is sought between the patient's blood picture and that seen in various blood diseases. When such a correlation is found, it may serve as the missing piece in the jigsaw puzzle of diagnosis.

This chapter presents the blood picture seen in the more common blood diseases. They will be considered in the following order:

The Anemias

The Leukemias

Hemorrhagic Diseases

Miscellaneous Diseases

THE ANEMIAS

Anemia means lack of blood. It is a condition characterized by a reduced hemoglobin, low red cell count, or a combination of the two. These shortages may be caused by a decrease in blood production, increase in blood destruction, or a severe loss of blood. For example, if the cell factories do not receive the proper raw materials, the production of red cells is decreased, and a deficiency anemia results. If the factories go on strike, production goes down, and an aplastic anemia follows. Should the cells leave the factories and become hijacked somewhere in the circulatory system, increased blood destruction occurs, and a hemolytic anemia results. Finally, an injury or operation may cause a severe loss of blood, and a posthemorrhagic anemia follows.

The anemias which will be discussed under the above classification are given below

- I Decreased blood production
 - A Deficiency anemias
 - 1 Pernicious anemia
 - 2 Simple achlorhydric anemia
 - B Aplastic anemias
 - 1 Aplastic anemia
- II Increased blood destruction
 - A Hemolytic anemias
 - 1 Sickle cell anemia
 - 2 Congenital hemolytic anemia
- III Severe blood loss
 - A Posthemorrhagic anemias
 - 1 Acute posthemorrhagic anemia

In the laboratory the anemias are discovered by finding a low hemoglobin or a low red cell count. Sometimes however both the hemoglobin and red cell count are low.

The hemoglobin content and size of the red cells associated with the anemias give rise to a further classification which the student will find useful since it offers a description of the cells involved. For instance if the cells are smaller than normal they are called microcytes, cells normal in size are referred to as normocytes, and cells larger than normal are called macrocytes. When the cells are deficient in hemoglobin they are labeled hypochromic, cells having the normal quota of hemoglobin are called normochromic, and cells having an increased amount of hemoglobin are referred to as hyperchromic. Thus when classified descriptively the following nine anemias are theoretically possible:

- | | | |
|----------------|--|--------|
| I Microcytic | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hypochromic} \\ \text{normochromic} \\ \text{hyperchromic} \end{array} \right\}$ | anemia |
| II Normocytic | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hypochromic} \\ \text{normochromic} \\ \text{hyperchromic} \end{array} \right\}$ | anemia |
| III Macrocytic | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hypochromic} \\ \text{normochromic} \\ \text{hyperchromic} \end{array} \right\}$ | anemia |

Chapter 7

Blood Picture in Various Blood Diseases

THE information which the technician gathers for the physician forms a pattern which is known as the patient's blood picture. It is extremely useful in diagnosis. For example, if the physician has a diagnostic problem and speculation points to a disease of the blood, a likeness is sought between the patient's blood picture and that seen in various blood diseases. When such a correlation is found, it may serve as the missing piece in the jigsaw puzzle of diagnosis.

This chapter presents the blood picture seen in the more common blood diseases. They will be considered in the following order:

- The Anemias
- The Leukemias
- Hemorrhagic Diseases
- Miscellaneous Diseases

THE ANEMIAS

Anemia means lack of blood. It is a condition characterized by a reduced hemoglobin, low red cell count, or a combination of the two. These shortages may be caused by a decrease in blood production, increase in blood destruction, or a severe loss of blood. For example, if the cell factories do not receive the proper raw materials, the production of red cells is decreased, and a deficiency anemia results. If the factories go on strike, production goes down, and an aplastic anemia follows. Should the cells leave the factories and become hijacked somewhere in the circulatory system, increased blood destruction occurs, and a hemolytic anemia results. Finally, an injury or operation may cause a severe loss of blood, and a posthemorrhagic anemia follows.

large and well packed with hemoglobin consequently the color index and volume index are high. The blood slide usually shows hypersegmented neutrophils nucleated red cells and greatly enlarged normochromic erythrocytes. Anisocytosis, poikilocytosis and polychromatophilia are quite marked.

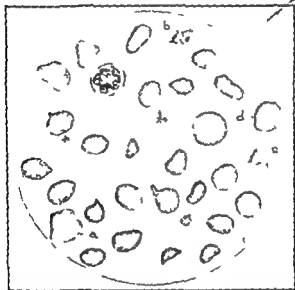


FIG. 65 — Drawing of blood smear from a case of pernicious anemia in relapse. Note the hypersegmented neutrophils and the large normochromic red cell. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are just marked. Cell (a) is a large polychromatophilic red blood cell (b) contains a Howell-Jolly body. Cell (c) contains a Cabot ring and cell (d) is a granule red capule. (Winterbe *Clinical Hematology*)

After treatment the red cell production is greatly increased, the reticulocyte count goes up and the blood picture returns to normal. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Figure 66. (Other laboratory findings in addition to the blood picture are a high xerotic index and the absence of free hydrochloric acid in the stomach.)

Blood pictures of the individual anemias, beginning with pernicious anemia are given on the following pages. The cells in all the illustrations have been stained with Wright's stain.

PERNICIOUS ANEMIA

(Synonyms: Addisonian anemia; Biermer's anemia)

Pernicious anemia is a deficiency anemia confined mainly to the middle aged. It is characterized by weakness, stomach disturbances and sore tongue. Until recent years diagnosis of the disease was synonymous with a death warrant. However in 1926 Minot and Murphy made the epoch making discovery that the disease could be relieved by the administration of liver. For this piece of research they received the Nobel Prize.

Table 21 — Typical Blood Picture in Pernicious Anemia

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
Red cell count	1 to 3 million	4.0 to 5.5 million
Hemoglobin	4 to 11 Gm	12 to 17 Gm
Color index	1.20 to 1.60	0.90 to 1.10
Volume index	1.10 to 1.50	0.90 to 1.10
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities Hypersegmented neutrophils Red cell abnormalities Nu leated red cells, large normochromic red cells anisocytosis, poikilocytosis and polychromatophilus	

The blood picture before treatment shows a low hemoglobin and low red cell count. The white cell and platelet counts are also below normal. The red cells are unusually

index is low. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Figure 66.

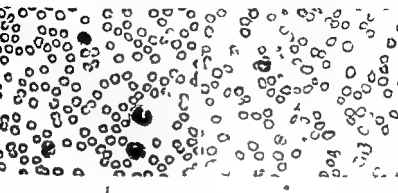


FIG. 66.—Blood slides illustrating normal and hypochromic erythrocytes (from Haden). 1 Normal blood 2 hypochromic erythrocytes. Note the presence of small hypochromic erythrocytes. Increased variations in the shape of the erythrocytes (poikilocytosis) = moderate.

SIMPLE ACHLORHYDRIC ANEMIA

(*Synonyms: Idiopathic hypochromic anemia
chronic hypochromic anemia late chlorosis*)

Simple achlorhydric anemia is an iron deficiency anemia which is usually confined to women. The name of the disease is derived from the absence of free hydrochloric acid (achlorhydria) in the gastric juices of patients having the disease. This anemia is characterized by weakness, menstrual disturbances, and a greenish coloration of the skin. Patients suffering from this type of anemia are relieved by the administration of large doses of iron.

Table 22—Typical Blood Picture in Simple Achlorhydric Anemia

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Red cell count	1 to 4 million	4.0 to 5.5 million
Hemoglobin	4 to 10 Gm	12 to 16 Gm
Color index	0.50 to 0.80	0.90 to 1.10
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities: None Red cell abnormalities: (any small hypochromic erythrocytes, poikilocytosis) moderate	

The blood picture shows a reduced hemoglobin and low red cell count. The stained red cells of the blood slide are small and markedly pale due to a shortage of hemoglobin. Often the hemoglobin is so deficient that the cells look like hollow rings. Since the cells are lacking in hemoglobin, the color

index is low. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Figure 66.

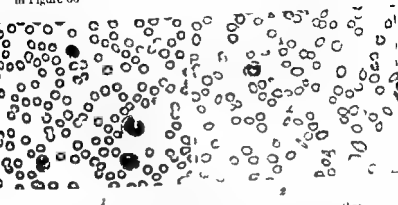


FIG. 66—Blood slides illustrating normal and hypochromic erythrocytes (from Haden). 1 Normal blood. 2 hypochromic erythrocytes. Note the presence of small hypochromic erythrocytes. Increased variations in the shape of the erythrocytes (poikilocytosis) is moderate.

APLASTIC ANEMIA

(Synonym Bone marrow insufficiency)

Aplastic anemia is a rare disease of the blood which may be caused by exposure to radioactive rays and poisoning with benzol or arsenic compounds. Often the cause is not apparent. It is characterized by weakness, a waxen pallor of the skin and bleeding from the mucous membranes. Patients having the disease generally die within six months.

Table 23 — Typical Blood Picture in Aplastic Anemia

Significant Erythematosis	Patient's Values	Normal Values
Red cell count	0.5 to 2.5 million	4.0 to 5.5 million
Hemoglobin	1 to 7 Gm	12 to 17 Gm
White cell count	1,000 to 3,000 per cu. mm.	5,000 to 10,000 per cu. mm.
Platelet count	5,000 to 50,000 per cu. mm.	250,000 to 350,000 per cu. mm.
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities	None
	Red cell abnormalities	Vital stain of blood slide shows a low reticulocyte count

The blood picture shows a greatly reduced hemoglobin and very low red cell count. The white cells and platelets are also reduced in number. The cells of the blood slide are normal but the reticulocyte count made after a vital stain is extremely low. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the bleeding gums found in a case of aplastic anemia are illustrated in Figure 67.

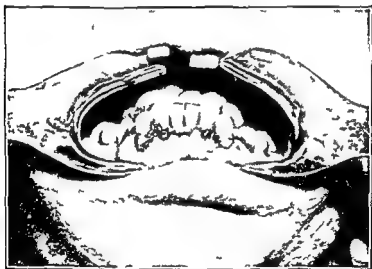


FIG. 67.—Bleeding gum. in a case of aplastic anemia
(Wintrobe *Clinical Hematology*)

SICKLE CELL ANEMIA

(Synonyms: Sickleman; Herrick's syndrome)

Sickle cell anemia is a hemolytic anemia which is confined almost exclusively to members of the negro race. Its cause is unknown. The disease is hereditary and roughly speaking is transmitted to five out of every thousand negroes. Patients having this disease generally die at an early age. I. W. Duggs who made a special study of sickle cell anemia found that the average age at death was 11 years.

Table 24—Typical Blood Picture in Sickle Cell Anemia

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
Red cell count	1 to 4 million	4.0 to 5.5 million
Hemoglobin	3 to 12 Gm	12 to 17 Gm
Sickle cell examination	Presence of many sickle-shaped red cells	

The blood picture shows a reduced hemoglobin and low red cell count. The demonstration of sickle-shaped red cells is the most significant feature in the blood picture. It is emphasized by Hricke however that sickle-shaped red cells are present in many individuals who never come down with the disease. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and sickle-shaped red cells are illustrated in Figure 68.

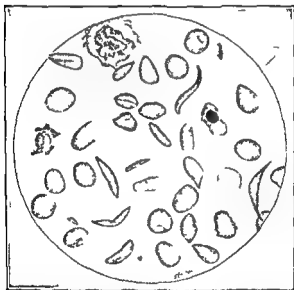


FIG. 68 — Drawing of a blood smear from a case of sickle cell anemia. Note the presence of many sickle-shaped red cells. (Wintrobe *Clinical Hematology*.)

CONGENITAL HEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

(Synonyms: Congenital hemolytic icterus
Spherocytic jaundice)

Congenital hemolytic anemia is an inherited disease which is characterized by relapses and remissions. During the remissions patients are apparently in good health but during relapses they may become jaundiced or show other signs of anemia. The clinical symptoms of this disease are too generalized for diagnostic purposes but the laboratory findings are extremely significant to the physician.

Table 25 — Typical Blood Picture in Congenital Hemolytic Anemia During a Relapse

Significant Examinations	Paternal Values	Normal Values
Red cell count	15 to 30 million	40 to 55 million
Hemoglobin	4 to 8 Gm	12 to 16 cm
Fragility test	hem begins 0.50% hem ends 0.40%	hem begins 0.44% hem ends 0.34%
Reticulocyte count	10 to 30%	1 to 2%
Blood slide	White: all abnormalities. Many metamyelocyte and occasional myelocyte. Red cell abnormalities: Spherocytes and metarubricytes are present and acrocytosis and polychromatophilia are marked.	

The blood picture during remissions is usually normal. However during relapses the hemoglobin drops and the red cell count falls. A decided increase in the hemolysis of red cells causes the icteric index to rise. The body attempts to

compensate for the increased destruction of cells and pour immature cells into the circulation. Consequently the reticulocyte count goes up and metarubricytes appear in the blood slide. Anisocytosis, poikilocytosis and polychromatophilia are marked.

The most significant feature of the blood slide is the appearance of small heavily stained red cells called spherocytes. The connection between the spherocytes and the disease is stated by Haden. The fundamental difficulty in this disease is an anatomic defect in the shape of the red cells which are spherocytes rather than normal biconcave disks. As a result of this abnormal shape the cells are more fragile than normal and are rapidly removed from the circulation. Consequently when a red cell fragility test is performed the red cells show increased fragility. A typical blood picture of this disease is given in the accompanying table and the spherocytes and reticulocytes found in the blood slide are illustrated in Figure 69.

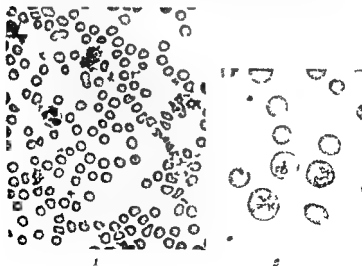


FIG. 69—Illustration of spherocytes and reticulocytes. 1 Spherocyte. Reticulocytes stained with a vital stain. (Haden *Principles of Hematology*.)

ACUTE POSTHEMORRHAGIC ANEMIA

Following injury or operation a person may lose a considerable amount of blood. The decreased volume of blood could result in the condition known as shock. This can be prevented however by the administration of plasma or other fluids. When such treatment is necessary the blood becomes diluted and shows signs of an anemia which is referred to as posthemorrhagic anemia.

Table 26 — Typical Blood Picture in Acute Posthemorrhagic Anemia

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Red cell count	1 to 4 million per cu. mm.	4.0 to 5.5 million per cu. mm.
Hemoglobin	3 to 11 Gm.	12 to 17 Gm.
Color index	0.40 to 0.80	0.90 to 1.10
Volume index	0.40 to 0.80	0.90 to 1.10
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities	None
	Red cell abnormalities	Many hypochromic microcytes; occasional metarubricyte

The blood picture immediately following the administration of fluids shows a reduced hemoglobin and low red cell count. This is caused by the dilution of the blood. The body endeavors to compensate for the loss of blood and produces immature cells at a rapid rate. Young cells often deficient in hemoglobin are hurried into the circulation. Consequently the blood slide may show small red cells which are lacking in the normal quota of hemoglobin. These cells are called hypochromic microcytes. An occasional metarubricyte

may be found and the reticulocyte count is increased. Polychromatophilic cells are often present. The above condition may last for about 10 days and then the blood picture re-



FIG. 70—Hypochromic microcytes
(Haden *Principles of Hematology*)

turns to normal. A typical blood picture during the anemia is given in the accompanying table and the characteristic hypochromic microcytes found in the blood slide are illustrated in Figure 70.

THE LEUKEMIAS

Leukemia is a disease of the blood forming tissues which is characterized by a tremendous increase in the production of white cells. The disease is rare, its cause is unknown and it is usually fatal. The classification of the leukemias is based on the course of the disease and the predominating type of white cells. Thus there are both acute and chronic granulocytic lymphocytic monocytic and plasmacytic leukemias (Table 27).

Table 27 — *Classification of the Leukemias*

1 Granulocytic leukemia	3 Monocytic leukemia
a Acute	a Acute
b Chronic	b Chronic
2 Lymphocytic leukemia	4 Plasmacytic leukemia
a Acute	a Acute
b Chronic	b Chronic

Patients having any of the acute leukemias usually die within several months. A great rise in the white cell count occurs and many immature cells appear in the blood slide. Quite often the cells are so immature that it is difficult to tell whether they belong to the granulocytic lymphocytic monocytic or plasmacytic series. Consequently the exact diagnosis of the disease often becomes difficult. Sometimes the company they keep furnishes a valuable clue. For example if the mature lymphocytes outnumber the mature granulocytes the chances are good that the young forms belong to the lymphocytic series.

Another means of differentiating immature members of the granulocytic and lymphocytic series is the peroxidase stain. The peroxidase stain demonstrates the presence of an oxidizing ferment in the cytoplasm of the granular series of cells with the exception of the myeloblast which reacts negatively since it alone contains no granules. (Kricke.) The cell of the granulocytic series with the exception of the

myeloblasts are therefore peroxidase positive whereas the cells of the lymphocytic series are peroxidase negative

The procedure for the peroxidase stain is as follows

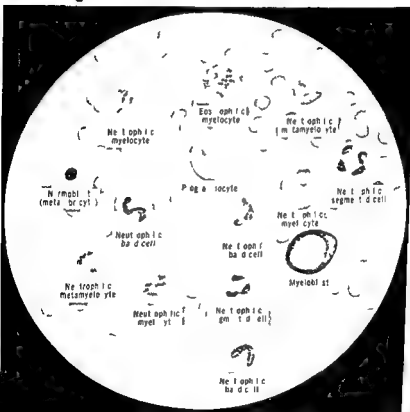
Peroxidase Stain (Sato and Sekiya)

- 1 Preparation of solutions
 - a 0.5% aqueous solution of copper sulfate
Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.500 Gm of anhydrous copper sulfate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.
 - b Benzidine solution. Using the rough balance weigh out 0.1 Gm of benzidine. Place in 100 cc of distilled water. Mix and filter. *Just before use* add a few drops of hydrogen peroxide.
 - c 1% aqueous solution of safranin. Using the rough balance weigh out 1 Gm of safranin. Place in a container and add 90 cc of distilled water. Mix.
- 2 Make a blood slide
- 3 Cover the slide with the 0.5% aqueous solution of copper sulfate. Let stand for about 20 seconds. Pour off the copper sulfate solution and do *not* wash.
- 4 Cover the blood slide with the benzidine solution. Let stand for 5 minutes. Pour off the benzidine solution and do *not* wash.
- 5 Cover the blood slide with the 1% aqueous solution of safranin. Let stand for 3 minutes.
- 6 Wash dry and examine with the oil immersion objective. The granules in the cells of the granulocytic series (with the exception of the myeloblasts) stain a deep purple. The cells of the lymphocytic series since they lack the granules do not take the stain. The cells of the monocytic series may or may not take the stain.

In the chronic leukemias the white cell count often rises to ten or twenty times the normal values and numerous immature cells appear in the blood slide. For instance in granulocytic leukemia it is not uncommon to see a white cell count of 200 000 and find 30 myelocytes in the differential. It is possible for a remission to occur and in such cases the white cell count may return to normal or even drop below normal. Unfortunately remissions are not permanent and a return to the typical blood picture follows. Patients having any of the chronic leukemias generally die within four years. No successful treatment has yet been found but frequent transfusions and x ray therapy may prolong the patient's life.

Since plasmacytic leukemia is extremely rare and the acute leukemias are seldom met by the technician the only forms of the disease which will be considered are chronic granulocytic leukemia, chronic lymphocytic leukemia and chronic monocytic leukemia. The blood pictures follow. The cells in the illustrations have been stained with Wright's stain.

PLATE IX



BLOOD SLIDE IN CHRONIC GRANULOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

CHRONIC GRANULOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

Chronic granulocytic leukemia is a rare disease of the blood which is generally confined to adults. It is characterized by an insidious onset, weakness and emaciation. Patients having the disease usually die within four years.

Table 23 — Typical Blood Picture in Chronic Granulocytic Leukemia

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
White cell count	50,000 to 100,000 per cu mm	5,000 to 10,000 per cu mm
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities: 5 to 35% myelocytes, occasional promyelocyte and myeloblast. Metamyelocyte and band cells present. Red cell abnormalities: 1 to 4% metarubricytes; mature red cells show anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, and polychromatophils.	

The blood picture shows a greatly increased white cell count with immature cells, both red and white, appearing in the blood slide. Following an acute infection or during treatment with x rays, the white cell count may return to normal. Immature white cells, however, continue to appear in the differential white cell count. A typical blood picture of this disease is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Plate IX.

CHRONIC LYMPHOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

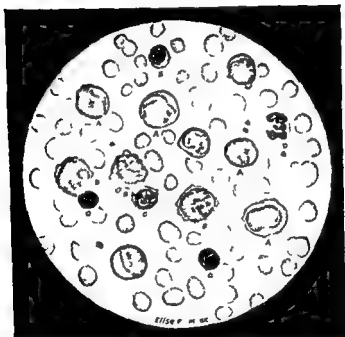
Chronic lymphocytic leukemia is a rare disease of the blood which is generally confined to adults. The cause of the disease is unknown and it is usually fatal. Life may be prolonged by transfusions but patients having this disease usually die within four years. The most significant clinical finding is a swelling of the lymph glands.

Table 29 — Typical Blood Picture in Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
White cell count	40 000 to 80 000 per cu. mm.	5 000 to 10 000 per cu. mm.
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities: Many lymphocytes (80 to 95%) immature lymphocytes (lymphoblasts and prolymphocyte) are present. Red cell abnormalities: Occasional metarubricyte; mature red cells show anisocytosis, poikilocytosis and polychromatophilia.	

The blood picture shows a tremendous increase in the white cell count. The number of lymphocytes in the blood slide is greatly increased and many immature forms are present. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Plate X.

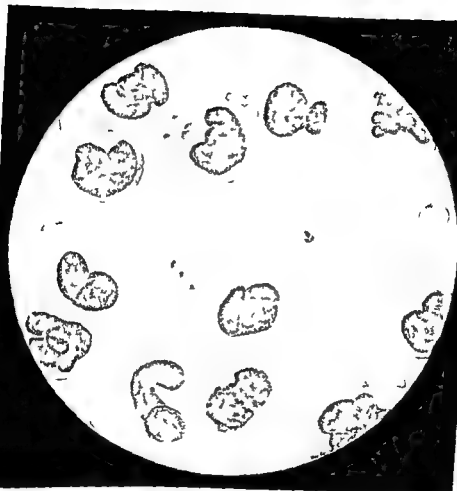
PLATE V



LYMPH CYTIC LEUKAEMIA

A Lymphoblast B neutrophil C lymphocyte
D neutrophil E erythrocyte (W. F. W. te C. mpin)
F erythrocyte G erythrocyte H erythrocyte I erythrocyte J erythrocyte

PLATE VI



CHRONIC MONOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

The cell near st the center which lacks granule is a pronucleocyte. All the other cell are monocyte. (Kricke *Diseases of the Blood* 2nd edition (Cortes) of J. B. Lippincott Company.)

CHRONIC MONOCYTIC LEUKEMIA

Chronic monocytic leukemia is a rare disease of the blood which is usually confined to adults. It is characterized by a sudden onset, weakness and emaciation. The disease is fatal and generally terminates at an earlier stage than either granulocytic or lymphocytic leukemia. One of the early clinical symptoms are oral disturbances, these may include bleeding gums, sore throat and swelling of the mucous membranes.

Table 30—Typical Blood Picture in Chronic Monocytic Leukemia

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
White cell count	40 000 to 80 000 per cu. mm.	5 000 to 10 000 per cu. mm.
Blood slide	WBC cell abnormalities monocytes	60 to 95%
	Red cell abnormalities rubricyt, mature red cells usually show anisocytosis, poikilocytosis and polychromatophilia	Occasional metarubricyt

The blood picture shows a very high white cell count with many monocytes appearing in the blood slide. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Plate VI.

HEMORRHAGIC DISEASES

Hemorrhagic diseases are characterized by abnormal bleeding. The bleeding may be external such as bleeding from the nose and mucous membranes or it may be internal such as hemorrhages into the tissues and joints. In some cases both external and internal bleeding are involved.

Some hemorrhagic diseases are caused by a weakness in the capillary walls. An example of this type is scurvy. Other hemorrhagic diseases are caused by a shortage of materials needed for the blood clot. Examples of this type are (1) essential thrombocytopenic purpura which is due to a shortage of thromboplastin and (2) hemorrhagic disease of the newborn which is due to a shortage of prothrombin.

The hemorrhagic diseases which will be discussed are

- 1 Essential thrombocytopenic purpura
- 2 Hemophilia
- 3 Hemorrhagic disease of the newborn

ESSENTIAL THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

(Synonyms: Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura hemorrhagica, Werlhof's disease)

Essential thrombocytopenic purpura is characterized by both internal and external bleeding the external bleeding being from the mucous membranes. The cause of the disease is unknown. It is more common in children and young adults than in older people. Quite frequently the only clinical symptoms are repeated nosebleeds, prolonged menstruations and bleeding from the gums. Transfusions tend to relieve the situation and the outlook for this disease is usually favorable.

Table 31 — Typical Blood Picture in Essential Thrombocytopenic Purpura

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
Bleeding time	20 to 60 min	1 to 3 min
Platelet count	50 000 to 200 000	2 00 000 to 350 000
Clot retraction time	no retraction in 24 hours	complete retraction in 24 hours
Capillary resistance test	positive	negative

The laboratory findings are an increased bleeding time, a decreased platelet count, a prolonged clot retraction time and a positive capillary resistance test. The coagulation time and prothrombin time are normal.

A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the abnormal clotting mechanism is illustrated in Figure 71.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN ESSENTIAL THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

The meaning of the following 3 symbols is printed beneath each symbol. The symbols are then used in the illustration below.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN THROMBOPENIA

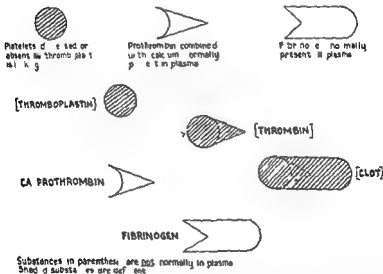


FIG. 71.—The clotting mechanism in essential thrombocytopenic purpura. Here the defect is a quantitative deficiency in the thromboplastin due to the thrombopenia. (Based on Principles of Hematology.)

HEMOPHILIA

Hemophilia is a rare disease of the blood which is characterized by excessive bleeding. The bleeding may be internal or external. The internal bleeding is frequently spontaneous and is marked by the seepage of blood into the tissues and joints of the body. The external bleeding may result from a tooth extraction or injury to the skin.

Table 32—Typical Blood Picture in Hemophilia

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Coagulation time	10 to 120 min	2 to 6 min

The disease is inherited and confined only to males. A man having hemophilia can not pass the disease on to his sons, but his daughters may inherit the genetic trait and transmit the disease to their sons. The majority of patients having hemophilia die before reaching manhood. However if they do live to become an adult their chances of living a normal life span are good. The usual treatment during a hemorrhage is complete bed rest and blood transfusions.

The laboratory findings are an increased coagulation time. The bleeding time is usually normal and the platelet count and clot retraction time are within normal values. The capillary resistance test is negative. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the clotting mechanism is illustrated in Figure 72.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN HEMOPHILIA

The meaning of the following 3 symbols is printed beneath each symbol. These symbols are then used in the illustration below.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN HEMOPHILIA

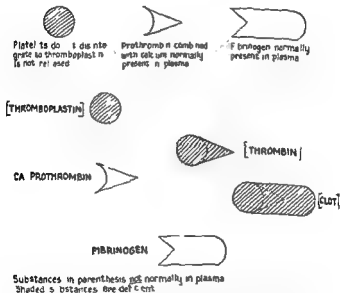


FIG. 2.—The clotting mechanism in hemophilia. Here the defect is in a qualitative abnormality of the platelets so thromboplastin is not normally released. (Haden *Principles of Hematology*.)

HEMORRHAGIC DISEASE OF THE NEWBORN

This hemorrhagic disease of infants is characterized by bleeding into the intestinal tract beneath the surface of the skin or from the umbilical cord. It is present in about 1 per cent of newborn infants (Todd and Sanford). The bleeding may occur anytime during the first two weeks of life. A temporary deficiency in prothrombin accompanies the disease and the condition is relieved by blood transfusions.

Table 33 — Typical Blood Picture in Hemorrhagic Disease of the Newborn

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Bleeding time	6 to 12 min	1 to 3 min
Coagulation time	10 to 20 min	2 to 6 min
Prothrombin time	20 to 60 sec	12 to 17 sec

The laboratory tests show that the bleeding coagulation and prothrombin times are prolonged. The platelet count and clot retraction time are normal. The capillary resistance test is negative. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the abnormal clotting mechanism is illustrated in Figure 73.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN HEMORRHAGIC DISEASES OF THE NEW BORN

The meaning of the following 3 symbols is printed beneath each symbol. These symbols are then used in the illustration below.

CLOTTING MECHANISM IN HEMORRHAGE OF THE NEW BORN

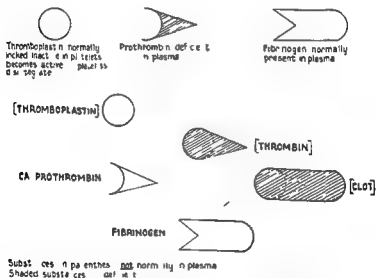


FIG. 3.—The clotting mechanism in hemorrhagic disease of the newborn. Here the defect is an insufficient supply of prothrombin (Haden, *Principle of Hematology*).

MISCELLANEOUS DISEASES

There are many diseases of the blood that cannot be properly classified under the anemias leukemias or hemorrhagic diseases. For instance anemias are characterized by a low red cell count. But is there a disease having a high red cell count? The leukemias have extremely high white cell counts. But is there a disease having an unusually low white cell count?

Some of the more common blood disorders which cannot be grouped under the anemias leukemias or hemorrhagic diseases will be considered in this section. The diseases which will be discussed are

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Polycythemia vera | 3 Erythroblastosis fetalis |
| 2 Malignant neutropenia | 4 Infectious mononucleosis |

POLYCYTHEMIA VERAX

(*Synonym* Erythremia)

Polycythemia vera is a rare disease of the blood which is characterized by a tremendous increase in the red cell count. It is generally confined to people over forty; its cause is unknown and it is usually fatal. The disease has an insidious onset and it is accompanied by weakness hemorrhages and a red coloration of the skin.

Treatment consists of decreasing the red cell production and increasing the red cell destruction. The production of red cells is decreased by radiation to the bone marrow and the red cell destruction is increased by the administration of chemicals which act as hemolytic agents.

The blood picture shows a greatly increased red cell count and a very high hemoglobin. The white cell count may be normal or increased. The hematocrit reading and platelet count are high. There are usually immature red and white cells in the blood slide. The viscosity of the blood is greatly increased and the total volume of blood is above normal. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and a photograph of a patient with the disease is given in Figure 74.

Table 34 —Typical Blood Picture in Polycythemia Vera

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Red cell count	~ to 12 million per cu mm	4.0 to 5.5 million per cu mm
Hemoglobin	18 to 24 Gm	12 to 16 Gm
Hematocrit reading	60 to 80%	37 to 50%
Platelet count	800 000 to 2 000 000 p r cu mm	250 000 to 350 000 per cu mm



FIG. 74.—Photograph of a drawing (original in color) of one of Oller's cases of erythremia. (Courtesy of the Johns Hopkins Hospital from Wintrobe *Clinical Hematology*.)

MALIGNANT NEUTROPENIA

(Synonyms Agranulocytosis Idiopathic neutropenia)

Malignant neutropenia is characterized by a marked decrease in the white cell count. The majority of cases are due to the effect on the bone marrow of amidopyrine or related drugs in a drug sensitive person (Hiden). Since compounds containing amidopyrine are frequently used in remedies for pain the disease may be curbed by the careful administration of these drugs. The outlook for the chronic course of the disease is usually favorable however the decreased number of white cells may enable a slight infection to produce fatal results. If the disease is acute death may come within a few days.

Table 35 — Typical Blood Picture in Malignant Neutropenia

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
White cell count	200 to 2 000 per cu. mm.	5 000 to 10 000 per cu. mm.
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities Decreased percentage of neutrophilic cells Toxic granulation of neutrophilic cell	Decreased per- centage of neutrophils Toxic gran- ulation
	Red cell abnormalities	None

The significant features of the blood picture are a low white cell count and toxic granulation in the neutrophilic cells of the blood smear. The toxic granulation appears as a coarse heavy precipitate in the cytoplasm. It is due to the effect of the drug on the cell. A typical blood picture of this disease is given in the accompanying table and the toxic granulation is illustrated in Figure 7.







Normal Neutrophilic Granulation		
Fine Basophilic Granulation		
Coarse Basophilic Granulation		

FIG 75 — Basophilic (toxic) granulation of the neutrophilic leukocytes. The toxic granules vary in size depending on the seriousness of the damage to the cells in the marrow (Haden *Principles of Hematology*)

ERYTHROBLASTOSIS FETALIS

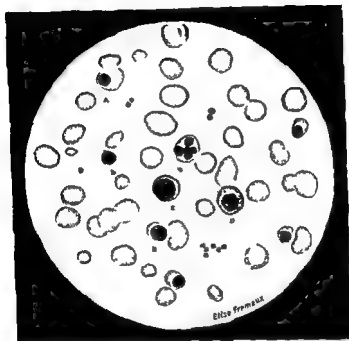
Erythroblastosis fetalis is a disease of the newborn which is associated with a severe hemolytic anemia. Before World War II the cause of the disease was unknown and it was often fatal. However, recent research in this field has uncovered knowledge which promises to salvage untold numbers of erythroblastic babies. The brilliant investigations of Levine, Wiener and others indicate that the hemolytic activity is caused by a reaction between agglutinogens and agglutinins.

Table 36 --Typical Blood Picture in Erythroblastosis Fetalis

Significant Examinations	Patient's Values	Normal Values
Red cell count	1 to 3 million per cu mm	40 to 55 million per cu mm
Hemoglobin	3 to 9 Gm	12 to 17 Gm
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities	Presence of many metamyelocytes and occasional myelocyte
	Red cell abnormalities	Many nucleated red cell; mature red cells are large and well filled with hemoglobin
Rh test	Rh positive baby and Rh negative mother	

The Rh agglutinogens present in the red cells of an Rh positive fetus enter the circulation of the mother and stimulate the production of Rh agglutinins. The Rh agglutinins pass into the fetal circulation react with the agglutinogens and cause hemolysis of the cells. The treatment in mild cases is to give transfusions with Rh negative blood and in

PLATE VII



ERYTHE OBLASTIC ANEMIA

W hits tun > 9>0 A No mollist B mirtchblasts C norn o
 llist h ing karyord u D yo no norn oblust slowing punctite
 lophula E lymphocyte (Wistr be lnce Practice of Medicine
 cut f f W F Fri r Company) Note The normoblasts in the
 above ill trati n e referred to a rubricyt in the new tern mol>v

severe cases to drain the infant's entire blood supply and simultaneously replace it with compatible blood.

The blood picture shows a low hemoglobin and low red cell count. The white cell count is usually high and immature cells, metamyelocytes and myelocytes appear in the differential. One of the most characteristic features of the blood slide is the presence of many nucleated red cells. The mature red cells are large and well filled with hemoglobin, anisocytosis and poikilocytosis are present. Due to the extreme hemolysis of red cells a high icteric index is observed. A typical blood picture is given in the accompanying table and the cells of the blood slide are illustrated in Plate VII. The normoblasts in the illustration are referred to as rubricytes in the new terminology.

INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS

(*Synonym* Glandular fever)

Infectious mononucleosis is a mildly contagious disease which is generally confined to children and young adults. Its cause is unknown. There are no specific characteristics of the disease but it is generally accompanied by soreness of the lymph glands, fever, nosebleed, sore throat and body rashes. The disease usually runs a course of about 30 days; however, relapses may occur.

*Table 37 --Typical Blood Picture in
Infectious Mononucleosis*

<i>Significant Examinations</i>	<i>Patient's Values</i>	<i>Normal Values</i>
Heterophile anti- body test	Clumping of cells through 1:12 dilution or higher	Clumping of cells through 1:56 dilution or lower
Blood slide	White cell abnormalities lymphocytes and 1 M cells	10 to 75%
	Red cell abnormalitie	None

Infectious mononucleosis is a difficult disease to diagnose and the physician relies heavily on the information furnished by the technician. The blood slide shows an increase in the number of monocytes and lymphocytes. The lymphocytes, however, are not the lymphocytes of normal blood but have a feature which is characteristic of this disease. This feature is a moth-eaten or vacuolated appearance of the cytoplasm. Several of these cells are illustrated in Plate VIII.

A typical blood picture in infectious mononucleosis is given in the accompanying table. The procedure for the heterophile antibody test which is mentioned in the table is given on page 191.



I. FICTITIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS (WRIGHT'S STAIN $\times 1,000$)

A Lymphocyte with moderately dense chromatin and vacuolated cytoplasm. B Small lymphocyte—normal except for a few vacuoles in the cytoplasm. C Lymphocyte with less dense chromatin in the nucleus and several azurophilic granules as well as a few vacuoles in the cytoplasm. D Lymphocyte which might be mistaken for a monocyte on account of its size and the shape of the nucleus. The coarse character of the chromatin and the blue vacuolated cytoplasm contrast with the fine nuclear chromatin, fine granulation and gray blue cytoplasm of a monocyte (E). (Wintrobe *Textbook of Medicine* courtesy of W. F. Priester, M.D.)

Appendix

Summary of Normal Values

Preparation of Solutions and Reagents

Interpretation of the Terminology

Registry Type Questions and Answers

Summary of Normal Values

Test	Normal Values	Common Causes of Increase		Common Causes of Decrease	
		leukemia pneumonia diphtheria meningitis and appendicitis		measles influenza bronchitis typhoid fever and malignant neutropenia	
White cell count	5 000 to 10 000 per cu mm				
Red cell count	4 0 to 5 5 million per cu mm	polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions		anemias and leukemias	
Hemoglobin in centimillion	12 to 17 grams per 100 cc (18 to 21%)	polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions		anemias and leukemias	
Differential white cell count	Basophilic segmented cells	0 to 1 %		Lymphocytes increased in mumps whooping cough infectious mononucleosis and lymphocytic leukemia	
	Lymphocytic segmented cells	1 to 3 %		Monocytes increased in typhus brucella tuberculosis and monocytic leukemia	
	Neutrophilic band cells	2 to 6 %		Neutrophilic band and segmented cells increased in acute infections and granulocytic leukemia	
	Monocytes	2 to 6 %		Lymphocytic segmented cells increased in asthma hay fever scarlet fever and diseases due to worms	
	Neutrophilic segmented cells	20 to 35 %			
		55 to 75 %			

Examination rate	Hemoglobin		acute infection tuberculosis pregnancy and cancer	rheumatic fever kidney negatives	all types of anemia
	Men (mm/hr) (gms/hr)	Women (gms/hr)			
Hematocrit reading	Westergren Cutler Winthrob- Lanberg	Men 40 to 50% Women 37 to 47%	dehydration conditions		
Sickle cell examination	No sickling present		sickle cell anemia		
Fragility test	Beginning of hemolysis 0.44% Completion of hemolysis 0.31%		hemolytic jaundice		of fracture joint free
Reticulocyte count	Adults 1 to 2% Infant 4 to 9%				anemia

Summary of Normal Values

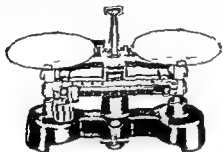
Test	Normal Values	Common Causes of Increase	Common Causes of Decrease
White cell count	5 000 to 10 000 per cu. mm.	leukemia pneumonia diphtheria meningitis and appendicitis	measles influenza brucellosis typhoid fever and malignant neutropenia
Red cell count	4 0 to 5 5 million per cu. mm.	polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions	anemias and leukemias
Hemoglobin estimation	12 to 17 grams per 100 cc. (8 to 110%)	polycythemia vera and dehydration conditions	anemias and leukemias
Differential white cell count	Basophilic segmented cells 0 to 1 % Lymphatic segmented cells 1 to 3 % Neutrophilic band cells 2 to 6 % Monocytes 2 to 6 % Lymphocytes 20 to 35 % Neutrophilic segmented cells 55 to 75 %	Lymphocytes increased in mumps whooping cough infectious mononucleosis and lymphocytic leukemia Monocytes increased in typhus brucellosis tuberculosis and monocytic leukemia Neutrophilic band and segmented cells increased in acute infections and granulocytic leukemia Eosinophilic segmented cells increased in asthma hay fever scarlet fever and diseases due to worms	

L L cells	Nurse found	I L cells present in lupus erythematosus	normally decreased after injection of ACTH
Eosinophil count	10 to 300 per cu mm		
Skin cell count	0 to 10 per cu mm	meningitis, encephalitis, poliomyelitis and latent syphilis	
Heterophile antititer	Preumptive test: clumping of cells through titer 1:50 or less Differential test: no clumping of cells	infectious mononucleosis before and after horse serum injections clumping of cells through titer 1:8 or higher in infectious mononucleosis	

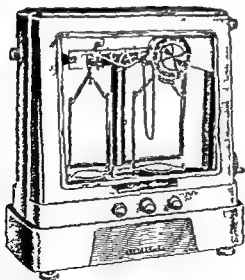
Summary of Normal Values (Continued)

Test	Normal Values		Common Causes of Increase	Common Causes of Decrease
	Duke method	Lee and White method		
Bleeding time	1 to 3 min	1 to 3 min	essential thrombocytopenic purpura and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn	
Coagulation time	Slide method 2 to 6 min Capillary tube method 2 to 6 min Lee and White method 5 to 10 min Howell method 10 to 30 min		hemophilia, obstructive jaundice and hemorrhagic disease of the newborn	
Clot retraction time	Some retraction at end of 2 hours and complete retraction at end of 24 hours		essential thrombocytopenic purpura	
Fibrinogen time	12 to 17 seconds		dicumarol therapy	
Platelet count	250 000 to 3,000 000 per cu mm			essential thrombocytopenic purpura
Capillary resistance test	No petechia formed		petechiae produced in essential thrombocytopenic purpura	

Since the analytical balance (Fig 76) is much more accurate than the rough balance it is chosen to prepare the majority of solutions and reagents. However it is more time consuming and in some cases where accuracy is not



A



B

Fig 76 — Analytical and rough balances.
A rough balance B analytical balance

PREPARATION OF SOLUTIONS AND REAGENTS

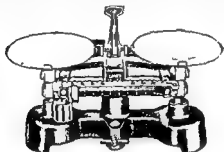
This section is the heart of the manual for the accuracy of any determination depends upon the reliability of the reagents. If the reagents are off the determination is off regardless of the ability of the technician. Consequently it behooves all students to double check the preparation of each solution and reagent and ask when they don't know or are in doubt.

Table 38 — Commonly Used Weights and Measures

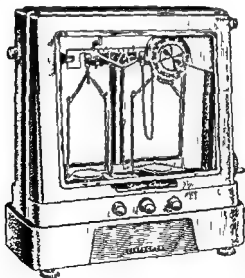
Weights			
Weight	Abbreviation	Equivalent	Rough Example
milligram	mg	1/1000 of a gram	An eyelash weighs about 1 mg
gram	Gm	1/1000 of a kilogram	A large pea weighs about 1 gram
kilogram	kilo	1000 grams	A kilogram is equal to 2.2 pounds

Measures			
Measure	Abbreviation	Equivalent	Rough Example
cubic centimeter	cc	1/1000 of a liter	There are about 15 drops of water in 1 cc
milliliter	ml	1/1000 of a liter	1 ml equals 1 cc. Thus there are also about 15 drops of water in 1 ml
liter	l	1000 cc or 1000 ml	A liter is slightly larger than a quart
millimeter	mm	1/10 of a centimeter	There are about 2.5 cm or 25 mm in 1 inch
cubic millimeter	cu mm	1/1,000,000 of a liter	In 1 drop of water there are about 6 cu mm.

Since the analytical balance (Fig 76) is much more accurate than the rough balance it is chosen to prepare the majority of solutions and reagents. However it is more time consuming and in some cases where accuracy is not



A



B

FIG 76 — Analytical and rough balances
 A rough balance B analytical balance

essential the rough balance may be substituted. The type of balance which must be employed is specified under each preparation.

There is nothing more distasteful than to see a student (or technician) using the rough balance to weigh out reagents which call for the accuracy of the analytical balance. Here they may be allowing a 5 or 10% error to creep into the determination before they even start the test! Not only that, think of their coworkers—the poor unenlightened souls who will also use these improperly prepared reagents.

The directions for preparing the solutions and reagents are given below. The commonly used weights and measures which are used in hematology, are listed in Table 38.

Acetic Acid

2% acetic acid

Place 98 cc of distilled water in a container

Add 2 cc of glacial acetic acid. Mix.

Anticoagulant

- a Mixture of ammonium oxalate and potassium oxalate

Using the rough balance weigh out 120 grams of ammonium oxalate and 80 grams of potassium oxalate. Place them in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix. Place 0.5 cc of this solution in a test tube and evaporate to dryness either at room temperature or in an oven which is not over 100° C. (The oxalate decomposes at higher temperatures.) The powdered oxalate remaining in the test tube will serve as an anticoagulant for 5 cc of blood.

- b Sequestrene Solution

Using the rough balance weigh out 10 grams of sequestrene. Place in a clean bottle and add 100 cc of distilled water. Mix. When 0.1 cc of this solution is placed in a test tube it will serve as an anticoagulant for 10 cc of blood. The solution does not have to be dried; it may be used in the liquid form.

Benzidine Solution

Using the rough balance weigh out 0.1 gram of benzidine. Place in 100 cc of distilled water. Mix and filter. Just before use add a few drops of hydrogen peroxide.

Brilliant Cresyl Blue

- a 1% normal saline solution of brilliant cresyl blue

Using the rough balance weigh out 1 gram of brilliant cresyl blue. Place in a container and add 90 cc of normal (0.85%) saline. Mix and filter.

- b 1% methyl alcohol solution of brilliant cresyl blue

Using the rough balance weigh out 1 gram of brilliant cresyl blue. Place in a container and add 90 cc of methyl alcohol. Mix and filter.

Calcium Chloride

0.025 (fortieth) molar calcium chloride

Using the analytical balance weigh out 1.3875 grams of anhydrous calcium chloride. Place in a 500 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 500 cc mark. Mix.

Copper Sulfate

0.5% copper sulfate solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.50 gram of anhydrous copper sulfate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

Drabkin's Solution (for cyanmethemoglobin)

This solution is poisonous! Handle with care!

Using the rough balance weigh out 10 gram of sodium bicarbonate (C.P.). Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask.

Using the analytical balance weigh out 52 milligrams of potassium cyanide (C.I.). Add to the volumetric flask.

Using the analytical balance weigh out 198 mg of potassium ferricyanide (C.P.). Add to the volumetric flask.

Add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix. Transfer to a brown bottle and store in the dark.

Gower's Solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 6.250 grams of crystalline sodium sulfate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric

flask. Add about 50 cc of distilled water. Add 16.7 cc of glacial acetic acid. Dilute to the 100 cc mark with distilled water. Mix.

Hayem's Solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.250 gram of mercuric chloride, 0.50 gram of sodium chloride and 2.50 grams of crystalline sodium sulfate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

Hydrochloric Acid

- a 1% (approximately 0.1 normal) hydrochloric acid

Place 99 cc of distilled water in a container. Add 1 cc of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Mix.

- b 0.1 N hydrochloric acid

Using a 10 ml volumetric pipet place exactly 10 ml of 1 N HCl in a 100 ml volumetric flask. Add distilled water to the 100 ml mark. Mix.

Leake and Guy Solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.050 gram of crystal violet and 1.60 gram of sodium oxalate. Place them in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add 6 cc of 40% formaldehyde. Dilute to the 100 cc mark with distilled water. Heat gently and filter.

New Methylene Blue N Solution

Using the rough balance weigh out 0.5 gram of new methylene blue N, 1.4 grams of potassium oxalate and 0.6 gram of sodium chloride. Place in a clean brown bottle. Add 100 ml of distilled water. Mix well. Filter before use.

Normal Saline

- a 0.85% (normal) saline solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 8.50 grams of sodium chloride. Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix.

- b sterile 0.85% (normal) saline

Using the analytical balance weigh out 8.50 grams of sodium chloride. Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask.

and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix
Autoclave for 20 minutes at 15 lbs. pressure

Oxalated Test Tube

Using the rough balance weigh out 12.0 grams of ammonium oxalate and 8.0 grams of potassium oxalate. Place them in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix. Place 0.5 cc. of this solution in a test tube and evaporate to dryness either at room temperature or in an oven which is not over 100° C. (Higher temperatures decompose the oxalate.) The powdered oxalate remaining in the test tube will serve as an anticoagulant for 0.5 cc. of blood.

Rees and Ecker Solution

Using the rough balance weigh out 0.1 gram of brilliant cresyl blue and 3.8 grams of sodium citrate. Place them in a 100 cc. volumetric flask and add 0.2 cc. of 40% formaldehyde. Dilute to the 100 cc. mark with distilled water. Mix.

Safranin

1% aqueous solution of safranin

Using the rough balance weigh out 1 gram of safranin. Place in a container and add 99 cc. of distilled water. Mix.

Sequestrene Solution (*Please look under anticoagulant*)

Sodium Carbonate

0.1% sodium carbonate solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 1.0 gram of anhydrous sodium carbonate. Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix.

Sodium Chloride

a 0.85% sodium chloride

Using the analytical balance weigh out 8.50 grams of sodium chloride. Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix.

b 0.1% sodium chloride

Using the analytical balance weigh out 0.10 gram of sodium chloride. Place in a 100 cc. volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc. mark. Mix.

Sodium Citrate**a 3.8% sodium citrate solution**

Using the analytical balance weigh out 3.80 gram. of sodium citrate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

b sterile 3.8% sodium citrate solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 3.8 grams of sodium citrate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix. Autoclave for 20 minutes at 15 lbs pressure.

Sodium Oxalate**a 1.10% sodium oxalate solution**

Using the analytical balance weigh out 1.10 grams of anhydrous sodium oxalate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

b 1.30% sodium oxalate solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 1.30 grams of anhydrous sodium oxalate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

c 1.34% sodium oxalate solution

Using the analytical balance weigh out 1.340 grams of anhydrous sodium oxalate. Place in a 100 cc volumetric flask and add distilled water to the 100 cc mark. Mix.

Tannen's Diluting Fluid**a Prepare 10.2% neutral red iodide solution as follows**

Using the rough balance weigh out 0.5 gram of neutral red iodide. (This reagent may be obtained from your local medical supply house or Allied Chemical and Dye Corp. 40 Rector St. New York N.Y.) Transfer the 0.5 gram of neutral red iodide to a large bottle. Add 250 cc of distilled water. Shake for 5 minutes. Filter.

b Pour the filtered neutral red iodide into a 100 milliliter volumetric flask until the 100 milliliter mark is reached

Add exactly 2.1 milliliters of 0.1 N NaOH . Mix well. Filter. Store at room temperature for 6 days and then filter again. This solution is stable.

Wright's Stain and Buffer Solution

a Wright's stain

Method one

Using the rough balance weigh out 3 grams of the powdered Wright's stain. Place in a container and add 1 liter of acetone free methyl alcohol. Mix. Let stand for several days mixing a few times each day. Filter before use.

Method Two

Using the rough balance weigh out 3 grams of powdered Wright's stain. Place in a container and add 30 cc of glycerol. Mix thoroughly grinding in a mortar if necessary. Place in a 37° C incubator or water bath for a few days stirring a few times each day. With constant stirring slowly add 1 liter of acetone-free methyl alcohol. Allow to age for a few days. Filter before use. This preparation of Wright's stain is recommended by many technicians.

b Buffer solution

Wright's stain contains the acid stain eosin which is red in color and the basic stain methylene blue which is blue in color. Consequently the more acid (lower pH) the buffer solution the more intense is the red coloration of the cells and the less pronounced is the blue coloration. On the other hand the less acid (higher pH) the buffer solution the less intense is the red coloration of the cells and the more pronounced is the blue coloration. Thus it is apparent that the degree of acidity (pH) of the buffer solution is a very important factor in obtaining a good stain.

Experience has shown that a buffer solution which has a pH between 6.4 and 6.6 gives the best results. Some technicians prefer the color contrast which is obtained with a buffer solution of pH 6.4 whereas others

like the buffer of pH 6.8. The best pH value is a matter of individual preference and can be decided by experimentation.

Buffer solutions of various pH values are prepared by mixing two solutions of phosphate salts. The phosphate salt solutions should be kept in pyrex containers at refrigerator temperature. They are prepared as follows:



Using the analytical balance weigh out 11.470 grams of anhydrous secondary sodium phosphate Na_2HPO_4 (or 11.870 grams of hydrated secondary sodium phosphate $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$). Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask. Add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix.



Using the analytical balance weigh out 9.050 grams of primary potassium phosphate KH_2PO_4 . Place in a 1 liter volumetric flask. Add distilled water to the 1 liter mark. Mix.

To make a buffer solution of the desired pH mix the quantities of phosphate solutions called for below.

pH	$\frac{M}{15} \text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$	$\frac{M}{15} \text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$
6.4	26.7 cc	73.3 cc
6.5	31.8 cc	68.2 cc
6.6	37.5 cc	62.5 cc
6.7	43.0 cc	56.0 cc
6.8	49.6 cc	50.4 cc

INTERPRETATION OF THE TERMINOLOGY

Words in hematology usually consist of one to three parts. They are called stem, prefix and suffix. For example, the

word hematology is made up of the stem *hemat* meaning blood and the suffix *ology* meaning study. Thus hematology means the study of blood. Erythrocyte consists of the stem *cyte* meaning cell and the prefix *erythro* meaning red. It follows that erythrocyte means red cell. An illustration of a word having all three parts is leukocytosis which is interpreted as an increase in the number of white cells. It may be broken down as follows:

prefix	stem	suffix
leuko white	cyt cell	osis increase

Table 39 —Stems, Prefixes and Suffixes Used in the Formation of Hematologic Words

Stem	Prefix	Meaning	Stem	Prefix	Meaning
a	suffix	without	macro		large
aniso		unequal	mega		large
basis		base	meniscus		crescent
blast		germ	meta		change
chrome		color	micro		small
ent		separate	mono		one
cyte		cell	morpho		form
cytosis		disease (cell)	myelo		marrow
erythro		red	neo		new
globin		globin	nexus		nut
granulo		granul	ology		study
hemorrhagic		blood	penia		poverty
hyper		greater	phil		love
lysis		loose	poesis		making
lymph		limb	polio		variety
kerat		nut (keratin)	post		after
leuk		white	pro		before
lymph		clear	reticulo		net
lytic		dissolve	thrombo		clot

If the student will keep in mind the meaning of the stems prefixes and suffixes given in Table 39 he will have little trouble mastering hematologic terminology. These word parts have their origin in Latin and Greek since the English language drew heavily upon these sources during its early stages of development.

The list below arranged in alphabetical order contains some of the more commonly used words and their definitions. Some words have a more inclusive interpretation than that given but it is hoped that the restricted definition paints a clearer hematologic picture.

achlorhydria	Without hydrochloric acid absence of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juices
agglutinins	Substance in plasma which may react with agglutinogens and cause clumping or agglutination of the red cells
agglutinogens	Substances in the red cells which may react with agglutinins and cause clumping or agglutination of the red cells
anisocytosis	A condition of increased variation in the size of red cells
aplastic	Lacking any tendency to develop into tissues
band cell	A cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the segmented cell
basophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series of cells. Basophilic cells have coarse deep purple granulation
congenital	Anything usually an abnormality which is born with a person
eosinophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series. Eosinophilic cells have coarse red granulation
erythroblastosis	A condition showing an increased number of immature red cells in the circulating blood
erythrocyte	The most mature cell of the erythrocytic series
hematocrit	A centrifuge for separating the cells from the plasma

hematocrit reading	The volume per cent occupied by the red cell in centrifuged blood
hematoma	A black and blue mark caused by the escape of blood from the capillaries or vein into the tissue
hemocytometer	A counting chamber used to count blood cell
hemoglobin	A pigment normally found in the red cell which contains iron and is capable of forming a temporary union with oxygen
hemoglobinometer	An apparatus for measuring hemoglobin
hemophilia	A hemorrhagic disease characterized by excessive bleeding
hyperchromic	A term describing red cell which have an excessive amount of hemoglobin (Many authorities state that this term is a misnomer since it is impossible for a red cell to have an excessive amount of hemoglobin)
hypertonic	A term describing a solution which has a greater concentration (osmotic pressure) than another with which it is associated Example If red cell are placed in a 10% salt solution the salt solution is a hypertonic solution because it is more concentrated than the fluid in the cell
hypochromic	A collective describing red cells which are deficient in hemoglobin
hypotonic	A term describing a solution which has a lesser concentration (osmotic pressure) than another with which it is associated Example If red cell are placed in a salt solution of 0.5% the salt solution is a hypotonic solution because it has a lesser concentration than the fluid in the cells
idiopathic	Cause unknown
isotonic	A term describing a solution which has the same concentration (osmotic pressure) as another solution with which it is associated Example If red cell are placed in a salt solution of 0.85% the salt solution is isotonic because the salt solution and the fluid in the cells have equal concentrations (osmotic pressure)

If the student will keep in mind the meaning of the stems, prefixes and suffixes given in Table 39 he will have little trouble mastering hematologic terminology. These word parts have their origin in Latin and Greek since the English language drew heavily upon these sources during its early stages of development.

The list below arranged in alphabetical order contains some of the more commonly used words and their definitions. Some words have a more inclusive interpretation than that given, but it is hoped that the restricted definition paints a clearer hematologic picture.

achlorhydria	Without hydrochloric acid; absence of hydrochloric acid in the gastric juices
agglutinins	Substances in plasma which may react with agglutinogens and cause clumping or agglutination of the red cells
agglutinogens	Substances in the red cells which may react with agglutinin and cause clumping or agglutination of the red cells
anisocytosis	A condition of increased variation in the size of red cells
aplastic	Lacking any tendency to develop into tissues
band cell	A cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the segmented cell
basophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series of cells. Basophilic cells have coarse deep purple granulation.
congenital	Anything usually an abnormality which is born with a person
eosinophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series. Eosinophilic cells have coarse red granulation.
erythroblastosis	A condition showing an increased number of immature red cells in the circulating blood
erythrocyte	The most mature cell of the erythrocytic series
hematocrit	A centrifuge for separating the cells from the plasma

poikilocytosis	A condition of increased variation in the shape of red cells
polychromasia	Same as polychromatophilia
polychromatophilia	A condition of increased variation in the staining qualities of red cells. The cells take a dirty blue to brownish coloration rather than the normal pink color
polycythemia	Excessive number of red cells in the blood
posthemorrhagic	After hemorrhage
progranulocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the myelocyte
prolymphocyte	The cell of the lymphocytic series which just precedes the lymphocyte
promegakaryocyte	The cell of the thrombocytic series which just precedes the megakaryocyte
promonocyte	The cell of the monocytic series which just precedes the monocyte
proplasmacyte	The cell of the plasmacytic series which just precedes the plasmacyte
prorubricyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the rubricyte
prothrombin	A substance which plays an essential role in blood coagulation
purpura	A hemorrhagic disease characterized by bleeding into the skin
reticulocyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the erythrocyte
rouleaux formation	Red cells bunched together like stacks of coins
rubriblast	The most immature cell of the erythrocytic series
rubricyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the metarubricyte
saline	A salt solution
segmented cell	The most mature cell of the granulocytic series
thrombocyte	The most mature cell of the thrombocytic series
thrombocytopenia	Shortage of thrombocytes
thromboplastin	A substance found in tissues, juices, and platelet disintegration which plays an essential part in the coagulation of blood

karyorrhexis	Splitting of nucleus
lymphoblast	The most immature cell of the lymphocytic series
lymphocyte	The most mature cell of the lymphocytic series
macrocyte	A large red cell
megakaryoblast	The most immature cell of the thrombocytic series
megakaryocyte	The cell of the thrombocytic series which just precedes the thrombocyte
metarubrcyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the reticulocyte
metamyelocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the band cell
microcyte	A small red cell
monoblast	The most immature cell of the monocytic series
monocyte	The most mature cell of the monocytic series
myeloblast	The most immature cell of the granulocytic series
myelocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the metamyelocyte
mononucleosis	An increase in the number of monocytes and lymphocytes
neutrophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series
normal saline	A 0.85% solution of sodium chloride
normochromic	A term describing red cells which are normal in hemoglobin content
normocyte	A red cell which is normal in size
oxalated test tube	A test tube containing an anticoagulant of potassium oxalate and ammonium oxalate
oxyhemoglobin	Hemoglobin containing oxygen
petechia	A small pit formed by the effusion of blood
plasmablast	The most immature cell of the plasmacytic series
plasmacyte	The most mature cell of the plasmacytic series

poikilocytosis	A condition of increased variation in the shape of red cells
polychromasia	Same as polychromatophilia
polychromatophilia	A condition of increased variation in the staining qualities of red cells. The cells take a dirty blue to brownish coloration rather than the normal pink color
polycythemia	Excessive number of red cells in the blood
posthemorrhagic	After hemorrhage
progranulocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the myelocyte
prolymphocyte	The cell of the lymphocytic series which just precedes the lymphocyte
promegakaryocyte	The cell of the thrombocytic series which just precedes the megakaryocyte
promonocyte	The cell of the monocytic series which just precedes the monocyte
proplasmacyte	The cell of the plasmacytic series which just precedes the plasmacyte
prorubricyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the rubricyte
prothrombin	A substance which plays an essential role in blood coagulation
purpura	A hemorrhagic disease characterized by bleeding into the skin
reticulocyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the erythrocyte
rouleaux formation	Red cells bunched together like stacks of coins
rubriblast	The most immature cell of the erythrocytic series
rubricyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the metarubricyte
saline	A salt solution
segmented cell	The most mature cell of the granulocytic series
thrombocyte	The most mature cell of the thrombocytic series
thrombocytopenia	Shortage of thrombocytes
thromboplastin	A substance found in tissue juices and platelet disintegration which plays an essential part in the coagulation of blood

karyorrhexis	Splitting of nucleus
lymphoblast	The most immature cell of the lymphocytic series
lymphocyte	The most mature cell of the lymphocytic series
macrocyte	A large red cell
megakaryoblast	The most immature cell of the thrombocytic series
megakaryocyte	The cell of the thrombocytic series which just precedes the thrombocyte
metarubricyte	The cell of the erythrocytic series which just precedes the reticulocyte
metamyelocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the band cell
microcyte	A small red cell
monoblast	The most immature cell of the monocytic series
monocyte	The most mature cell of the monocytic series
myeloblast	The most immature cell of the granulocytic series
myelocyte	The cell of the granulocytic series which just precedes the metamyelocyte
mononucleosis	An increase in the number of monocytes and lymphocytes
neutrophilic	A term describing the granulation found in certain members of the granulocytic series
normal saline	A 0.85% solution of sodium chloride
normochromic	A term describing red cells which are normal in hemoglobin content
normocyte	A red cell which is normal in size
oxalated test tube	Test tube containing an anticoagulant of powdered ammonium and potassium oxalates
oxyhemoglobin	Hemoglobin containing oxygen
petechia	A small purplish discoloration of blood
plasmablast	The most immature cell of the plasmatic series
plasmacyte	The most mature cell of the plasmatic series

- b* dry heating in an oven at 100 °C for 1 hr
 - c* boiling in water for 30 min and drying in an oven
- 4 Which of the following blood preparations is not a liquid pages 27-31
 - a* blood serum
 - b* blood smear
 - c* blood plasma
 - d* cell suspension
- 5 Which of the following substances is not used in the coagulation of blood pages 28-32
 - a* prothrombin
 - b* calcium
 - c* sodium chloride
 - d* fibrinogen
- 6 Which of the following is not an anti-coagulant page 29
 - a* heparin
 - b* potassium oxalate
 - c* calcium chloride
 - d* sequestrene
- 7 The normal values for the white cell count are page 33
 - a* 4 000 to 8 000 per cu mm
 - b* 8 000 to 12 000
 - c* 5 000 to 10 000
- 8 A CBC does not include the following test page 33
 - a* white cell count
 - b* platelet count
 - c* differential white cell count
 - d* red cell count
- 9 Which of the following solutions is not used as a diluting fluid for the white cell count page 35

REGISTRY TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

This section contains 106 type questions found on Registry examinations

The first part of the section contains 66 multiple choice questions. The second part contains 40 true-false type questions. The answers to all questions are given at the end of the section. As an added convenience to the student the pages of reference are listed with each question.

Some problems call for calculations which the average person can not make 'in his head'. For these calculations the student should use scratch paper.

Place a circle or bracket around the letter which you consider the best answer to the question or problem.

Example

The word leukocytosis refers to a

- a Low white cell count
- [b] High white cell count
- c Normal white cell count

- | <i>Question or Problem</i> | <i>Here Discussed</i> |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 The average man has approximately the following volume of blood <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a 3 quarts (about 3 liters) b 5 quarts c 7 quarts | page 10 |
| 2 Which of the following needles has the bore with the widest diameter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a 19 gauge b 20 gauge c 21 gauge | page 16 |
| 3 Which method is <i>not</i> satisfactory for sterilizing needles and syringes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a autoclaving for 20 min at 15 lbs pressure | page 16 |

number in 10 cu mm the volume correction factor is

- a 50
- b 100
- c 200
- d 10

- 15 Hemoglobin normally occurs in the circulating blood as reduced hemoglobin and page 56

- a sulfhemoglobin
- b oxyhemoglobin
- c methemoglobin

- 16 The normal values for hemoglobin are page 56

- a 6 to 10 grams per 100 cc
- b 10 to 14
- c 12 to 17
- d 4 to 8 micrograms per 100 cc

- 17 Which of the following does not belong to the white cell series of cells page 75

- a monocytic series
- b granulocytic series
- c erythrocytic series
- d plasmacytic series

- 18 In a normal differential white cell count you would expect to find the following per cent of neutrophilic segmented cells page 77

- a 20 to 35%
- b 2 to 6%
- c 50 to 70%
- d 70 to 90%

- 19 The buffer solution used with Wright's stain should have the following pH page 83

- a 6.4 to 6.8
- b 6.0 to 6.4
- c 6.8 to 7.2

- a 1% hydrochloric acid
- b 2% acetic acid
- c 1% sodium chloride /

- 10 The counting chamber has a depth of 0.1 mm. The white cells are counted in the four large corner squares, each square having an area of 1 sq. mm. The volume correction factor for the white cell count is page 46

- a 5
- b 2.5
- c 50
- d 20

- 11 Which solution is not used as a diluting fluid for the red cell count page 49

- a Gower's solution
- b Rice and Eckler solution
- c Hayem's solution

- 12 Since the blood is diluted 0.5 to 100 in the red cell count, the dilution correction factor is page 53

- a 100
- b 200
- c 20

- 13 In the Spencer bright line hemocytometer the chamber depth is 0.1 mm. What is the volume over 16 of the smallest squares (1 R section) in the ruled area page 51

- a 0.004 cu. mm
- b 0.010 cu. mm
- c 0.020 cu. mm
- d 0.020 cu. mm

- 14 In the red cell count the cells are counted in 0.02 cu. mm of solution. Since the report is to be given as the page 53

- b Tallqvist
- c Westergren
- d Wintrobe Landsberg

- 26 Tilting the tube used in sedimentation rate determinations will cause the rate to be page 91
- a unchanged
 - b decreased
 - c increased
- 27 The normal values for the hematocrit reading in men are page 102
- a 0 to 9 mm per hour
 - b 0 to 20 mm per hour
 - c 30 to 40%
 - d 40 to 50%
- 28 Which of the following is not a method for determining the hematocrit reading page 103
- a Wintrobe
 - b Van Allen
 - c Peters and Van Slyke
 - d Sanford Magath
- 29 The red cell count is normal and the cells of the blood slide appear to be normochromic and normocytic the hematocrit reading will be close to page 102
- a 70%
 - b 40%
 - c 100%
 - d 9 mm per hour
- 30 In the red cell fragility test the cells of a normal person begin to hemolyze at a salt concentration of page 112
- a 0.50%
 - b 0.44%
 - c 0.34%
 - d 0.30%

- 20 An eosinophilic band cell is a member of the following series of cells Plate II
page 76
- a lymphocytic
 - b monocytic
 - c granulocytic
 - d plasmicytic
- 21 A white cell count is below normal and the differential shows an increased number of band cells. According to the Schilling system it would be considered a page 89
- a regenerative shift to the left
 - b shift to the right
 - c degenerative shift to the left
- 22 Variation in the size of red cells is known as page 92
- a poikilocytosis
 - b polychromatophilia
 - c basophilic stippling
 - d anisocytosis
- 23 A red cell has a clear rim around the edges with an area of hemoglobin concentration in the middle. It is page 92
- a hyperchromic
 - b anisocytic
 - c a target cell
 - d a basket cell
- 24 The immediate precursor of the erythrocyte is the Plate IV
page 92
- a normoblast
 - b megaloblast
 - c reticulocyte
 - d metarubricyte
- 25 Which of the following is not a method for determining the sedimentation rate page 94
- a Cutler

- b Tallqvist
- c Westergren
- d Wintrobe-Landberg

- 26 Tilting the tube used in sedimentation rate determinations will cause the rate to be page 94
- a unchanged
 - b decreased
 - c increased
- 27 The normal values for the hematocrit reading in men are page 102
- a 0 to 9 mm per hour
 - b 0 to 20 mm per hour
 - c 30 to 40%
 - d 40 to 50%
- 28 Which of the following is not a method for determining the hematocrit reading page 103
- a Wintrobe
 - b Van Allen
 - c Peters and Van Slyke
 - d Sanford Magath
- 29 The red cell count is normal and the cells of the blood slide appear to be normochromic and normocytic the hematocrit reading will be close to page 102
- a 70%
 - b 40%
 - c 100%
 - d 9 mm per hour
- 30 In the red cell fragility test the cells of a normal person begin to hemolyze at a salt concentration of page 112
- a 0.50%
 - b 0.44%
 - c 0.31%
 - d 0.30%

- 20 An eosinophilic band cell is a member of the following series of cells Plate II
page 76
- a lymphocytic
 - b monocytic
 - c granulocytic
 - d plasmacytic
- 21 A white cell count is below normal and the differential shows an increased number of band cells. According to the Schilling system it would be considered a page 89
- a regenerative shift to the left
 - b shift to the right
 - c degenerative shift to the left
- 22 Variation in the size of red cells is known as page 92
- a poikilocytosis
 - b polychromatophilia
 - c basophilic stippling
 - d anisocytosis
- 23 A red cell has a clear rim around the edges with an area of hemoglobin concentration in the middle. It is page 92
- a hyperchromic
 - b anisocytic
 - c a target cell
 - d a basket cell
- 24 The immediate precursor of the erythrocyte is the Plate IV
page 92
- a normoblast
 - b megakaryoblast
 - c reticulocyte
 - d metarubricyte
- 25 Which of the following is not a method for determining the sedimentation rate page 94
- a Cutler

- b* 1 to 5 mm
 - c* 3 to 5 mm
 - d* 6 to 10 mm
- 37 Which of the following is not a method for the coagulation time page 120
- a* Wintrobe method
 - b* Capillary tube method
 - c* Lee and White method
 - d* Howell method
- 38 The normal values for the Lee and White coagulation time are page 130
- a* 10 to 30 min
 - b* 1 to 3 min
 - c* 2 to 6 min
 - d* 5 to 10 min
- 39 The normal values for the prothrombin time are page 140
- a* 1 to 3 min
 - b* 5 to 10 min
 - c* 12 to 17 sec
 - d* 20 to 25 sec
- 40 During treatment with dicumol the prothrombin time is page 140
- a* normal
 - b* increased
 - c* decreased
- 41 The normal values for the platelet count are page 146
- a* 5 000 to 1 000 cell per cu mm
 - b* 1 to 2%
 - c* 200 000 to 3 00 000 cells per cu mm
- 42 Which of the following is not a method for the platelet count page 147
- a* direct method
 - b* Ivy method
 - c* indirect method

- 31 In adults the normal values for the reticulocyte count are page 118
- a 8 to 10%
 - b 1 to 2 %
 - c 6 to 8 %
 - d 4 to 6 %
- 32 Which of the following is used for staining reticulocytes page 117
- a gentian violet
 - b brilliant green
 - c brilliant cresyl blue
 - d Wright's
- 33 The normal value for the hemoglobin is given as 14.5 grams per 100 cc and the normal value for the RBC is given as 5 million per cu mm. If the patient's hb is 11.0 grams and his RBC is 4 million the color index is page 124
- a 0.85
 - b 0.95
 - c 1.10
 - d 0.98
- 34 The mean corpuscular volume of a healthy person is page 125
- a 50 to 60 cu microns
 - b 80 to 90 cu microns
 - c 95 to 100 cu microns
- 35 In the formation of a blood clot fibrinogen is transformed to page 132
- a thrombin
 - b thromboplastin
 - c prothrombin
 - d fibrin
- 36 The normal values for the bleeding time are page 133
- a 4 to 5 min

- 49 Which of the following is not needed in a cross match page 167
- a patient's serum
 - b 0.5% sodium chloride
 - c donor's serum
 - d patient's cell suspension
- 50 In the direct Coombs test the following blood preparation is required page 174
- a cell suspension from father
 - b cell suspension from infant
 - c serum from mother
- 51 An offspring with erythroblastosis fetalis commonly results from an page 176
- a Rh positive mother and Rh negative father
 - b Rh negative mother and Rh positive father
 - c Rh positive mother and Rh positive father
- 52 Which reagent or preparation is not used in an Rh titer page 176
- a normal (0.85%) saline
 - b bovine albumin
 - c fresh group O Rh positive blood
 - d sheep cells
- 53 The I I cell may be found in the following disease page 179
- a leukemia
 - b lupus erythematosus
 - c infectious mononucleosis
 - d hemophilia
- 54 The normal values for the eosinophil count are page 181
- a 10 to 15%
 - b 150 to 300 cells per cu mm
 - c 1 to 4

- 43 The clot retraction time is related to page 139
 a white cell count
 b platelet count
 c coagulation time
 d prothrombin time
- 44 Which of the following is used in the capillary resistance test page 142
 a Gram's iodine
 b Leeke and Guy solution
 c blood pressure apparatus
 d normal (0.85%) saline
- 45 People in blood group A have the following agglutinin in their plasma pages 174 153
 a a
 b none
 c b
- 46 Group B blood contains the following agglutinogens in the red cells page 154
 a A
 b B
 c O
- 47 Which of the following blood groups is called the universal donor page 150
 a B
 b O
 c A
 d AB
- 48 In the slide method of ABO grouping if the blood is clumped by group A (anti B) serum and also by group B (anti A) serum it belongs to group pages 161 162
 a A
 b B
 c AB
 d O

- 61 The stain used to differentiate immature members of the granulocytic and lymphocytic series is known as page 211
- a Wright's stain
 - b cresyl blue
 - c peroxidase stain
 - d Giemsa stain
- 62 In doing a differential white cell count on a patient with chronic granulocytic leukemia you would expect to find from 5 to 30% page 213
- a myeloblasts
 - b myelocytes
 - c promyelocytes
 - d rubriblasts
- 63 Which test is not increased in essential thrombocytopenic purpura page 218
- a bleeding time
 - b platelet count
 - c clot retraction time
- 64 Which test is not increased in hemorrhagic disease of the newborn page 222
- a coagulation time
 - b bleeding time
 - c clot retraction time
 - d prothrombin time
- 65 In polycythemia vera you would expect to find page 224
- a normal red cell count
 - b low hemoglobin
 - c low hematocrit reading
 - d high red cell count
- 66 In malignant neutropenia you would expect to find page 226
- a high white cell count
 - b normal white cell count

- 50 The heterophile antibody test is a useful diagnostic aid in page 191
- a malignant neutropenia
 - b infectious mononucleosis
 - c leukemia
 - d pernicious anemia
- 56 Which reagent is not used in the heterophile antibody test pages 191-194
- a 0.5% sodium chloride
 - b suspension of sheep cells
 - c 0.85% sodium chloride
 - d guinea pig kidney antigen
- 57 Sickle cell anemia is a page 197
- a deficiency anemia
 - b aplastic anemia
 - c hemolytic anemia
 - d hemorrhagic anemia
- 58 In aplastic anemia the reticulocyte count is page 202
- a normal
 - b increased
 - c decreased
- 59 The blood picture during a relapse of congenital hemolytic anemia shows page 206
- a sickle cells
 - b spherocytes
 - c target cell
 - d megakaryocytes
- 60 Which of the following is not classified as a leukemia page 210
- a granulocytic leukemia
 - b plasmatic leukemia
 - c normocytic leukemia
 - d monocytic leukemia

- | | | | | |
|----|---|---|---|----------|
| 8 | When blood is drawn to the 0.5 mark and diluting fluid to the 101 mark of the red cell pipet the blood is diluted 1 in 200 | T | F | page 50 |
| 9 | An eosinophilic leukocytosis is usually found in asthma hay fever and parasitic infestations | T | T | page 77 |
| 10 | Wright's stain is a methyl alcohol solution of eosin and gentian violet | T | F | page 82 |
| 11 | The sedimentation rate is increased in acute infections rheumatic fever pregnancy and cancer | T | F | page 94 |
| 12 | In the Wintrobe-Landsberg method for the sedimentation rate the normal values for men are 0 to 20 mm per hour | T | F | page 94 |
| 13 | In dehydration conditions such as a severe burn case you would expect to find a low hematocrit reading | T | F | page 102 |
| 14 | If the oxygen is removed from the red cells of a person with sickle cell anemia the red cells become sickle shaped | T | T | page 107 |
| 15 | In hemolytic jaundice the fragility of the red cells is decreased | T | F | page 109 |
| 16 | In the fragility test the red cells are placed in a hypertonic salt solution | T | T | page 109 |
| 17 | The mean corpuscular hemoglobin is the weight of hemoglobin in the average red cell | T | F | page 121 |
| 18 | In determinations of the coagulation time the capillary blood methods have a shorter coagulation time than the venous blood methods | T | F | page 135 |

- c high hematocrit reading
- d low white cell count

The following statements are either true or false. If the statement is true place a bracket or circle around the T; if it is false place a bracket or circle around the F.

Example

A promyelocyte is an immature white cell [T] T

- 1 One of the functions of the blood is to aid in regulating the water content, temperature, and alkalinity of the tissues. T T page 9
- 2 For every white cell there are approximately 400 platelets and 1000 red cells. T T page 10
- 3 In making a venipuncture the tourniquet is released after the needle is withdrawn from the vein. F F pages 19-21
- 4 The needle should be removed from the syringe before the blood is expelled into a test tube. T T page 26
- 5 Serum differs from plasma in that it contains no fibrinogen. T T page 24
- 6 When the red cells are placed in a hypotonic salt solution, water enters the cells and causes them to swell. F F page 31
- 7 When blood is drawn to the 0 mark and diluting fluid to the 110 mark of the white cell pipet, the blood is diluted 1 in 20. F T page 37

- | | | | | |
|----|---|---|---|----------|
| 30 | Since the cells in spinal fluid disintegrate rapidly the spinal count should be made while the fluid is fresh | T | I | page 184 |
| 31 | Spinal fluid often contains contagious material | T | I | page 184 |
| 32 | The best time to obtain blood for a malaria smear is during the chills and fever stage | T | I | page 187 |
| 33 | Bone marrow smears are of particular interest in aplastic anemia pernicious anemia and multiple myeloma | T | I | page 189 |
| 34 | Pernicious anemia is one of the deficiency anemias | T | I | page 197 |
| 35 | In simple achlorhydric anemia the red cells of the blood slide are unusually large and well packed with hemoglobin | T | I | page 200 |
| 36 | Hypochromic microcytes may be found in the blood slide during acute posthemorrhagic anemia | T | I | page 208 |
| 37 | A typical blood picture in chronic lymphocytic leukemia shows a white cell count of 40 000 to 80 000 cells per cu mm and a differential of 80 to 90% lymphocyte | T | I | page 214 |
| 38 | In hemophilia the bleeding time is usually normal but the coagulation time is increased | T | I | page 220 |
| 39 | In erythroblastosis fetalis one of the most characteristic features of the blood slide is the presence of many nucleated red cells | T | I | page 229 |
| 40 | You would expect to find many abnormal red cells but no abnormal white cells in infectious mononucleosis | T | I | page 230 |

- 19 In dicumarol therapy a hemorrhage may occur if the clotting activity of the blood is greatly decreased T I page 140
- 20 In prothrombin time determinations if the plasma is not used immediately it should be stored in the refrigerator T I pages 141
143
- 21 When platelets disintegrate they release thromboplastin one of the essential factors in coagulation T I page 146
- 22 The capillary resistance test measures the ability of the capillaries to resist pressure T I page 150
- 23 In the transfusion of blood the red cell agglutinogens entering the patient must not meet similar agglutinins T I pages 155
156
- 24 About 45% of the population is in blood group O T I page 154
- 25 Group O blood has no agglutinins in its plasma I I pages 154
155
- 26 Rh agglutinins may be produced by an Rh positive person receiving Rh negative blood I I pages 157
158
- 27 In the slide method for Rh typing Rh positive blood usually takes from 5 to 10 minutes to clump I I page 160
- 28 In a cross match the major side determines the compatibility of the donor's serum and the patient's cells I I page 166
- 29 If the mother is Rh negative and the father is Rh positive there is a possibility of having an erythroblastic baby I I page 170

- CRADWELL, R. M. H. *Clinical Laboratory Methods and Diagnosis* 5th Ed. St. Louis: The C. V. Mosby Co. 1936
- HADEN RUSSELL. *Principles of Hematology* 3rd Ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1916
- HAM THOMAS HALE. *A Syllabus of Laboratory Examinations in Clinical Diagnosis* Cambridge: Harvard University Press 1930
- HAWK PHILIP B. OER BRUNARD I. and SUMNERSON WILLIAM H. *Practical Physiological Chemistry* 13th Ed. New York: The Blakiston Division McGraw Hill Book Co. Inc. 1947
- Hematology* War of Naval Medical School Bethesda Maryland 1936
- HEFLER OPAL E. *Manual of Clinical Laboratory Methods* 4th Ed. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas 1942
- KOLMER JOHN A. SPALDING EARLE A. and ROBINSON HOWARD W. *Approved Laboratory Technique* 5th Ed. New York: Appleton Century Crofts Inc. 1931
- KRACKE ROY R. *Diseases of the Blood* 2nd Ed. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co. 1941
- LEVINSON SAMUEL A. and MACFATE ROBERT P. *Clinical Laboratory Diagnosis* 5th Ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1937
- LILY FIL CO. *Monograph on the Inemas*
- Methods for Laboratory Technicians* Technical Manual No. 8-277 War Department Washington D. C. 1931
- MILLER SEWARD E. *Textbook of Clinical Pathology* 5th Ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins Co. 1933
- ORGOOD EDWIN F. and A. H. WORTH CLARICE M. *Atlas of Hematology* San Francisco: J. W. Stacey Inc. 1938
- PINEY A. *Clinical Atlas of Blood Diseases* 4th Ed. New York: The Blakiston Division McGraw Hill Book Co. Inc. 1916
- SHARPE AND DOWNE. *Seminars on Hematology*
- SITT F. R. CLOUGH LAUREL W. and BRANHAM SARA F. *Practical Bacteriology, Hematology and Parasitology* 10th Ed. New York: The Blakiston Division McGraw Hill Book Co. Inc. 1948
- TODD J. C. SANFORD A. H. and I. WELL BENJAMIN. *Clinical Diagnosis by Laboratory Method* 12th Ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Co. 1933
- WINTROBE MAXWELL M. *Clinical Hematology* 4th Ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger 1934

Answers to Registry Type Questions

Multiple Choice Questions				True/False Questions	
1	b	23	c	1	T
2	a	24	c	2	F
3	b	25	b	3	T
4	c	26	c	4	T
5	c	27	d	5	T
6	c	28	c	6	T
7	c	29	b	7	T
8	b	30	b	8	T
9	c	31	b	9	T
10	b	32	c	10	F
11	b	33	b	11	T
12	b	34	b	12	F
13	a	35	d	13	F
14	a	36	b	14	T
15	b	37	a	15	F
16	c	38	d	16	F
17	c	39	c	17	T
18		40	b	18	T
19	a	41	c	19	T
20	c	42	b	20	T
21	c	43	b		
22	b	44	c		

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- BLACK, REGINA COOK. *Laboratory Manual of Hematologic Technique*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Co. 1979.
- BRAY, W. F. *Synopsis of Clinical Laboratory Methods*. 5th Ed. St. Louis: C. V. Mosby Co. 1967.
- BROWN, ALAN I. *Technique of Methods for Human Analysis*. Brown.
- CARTWRIGHT, GEORGE I. *Diagnostic Laboratory Hematology*. New York: Crane & Stratton Co. 1954.
- DARMADY, F. M. and DAVENPORT, S. C. T. *Hematological Technique*. New York: Crane & Stratton. 1954.
- DAVIDSON, I. RAEL, and STEVEN, HERT. *Curriculum for School of Medical Technology*. 3rd Ed. Copyright by The Registry of Medical Technology of the ASCT.

Index

A

- ABO grouping, 160
 preparation of blood 160
 slide method 161
 test tube method 161
- Absorbed serum 160
- Acid fœmatin "2
- Addisonian anemia 198
- Agglutinins 153 155
 albumin 1 18
 coll 111
- Agglutinogens 153 156
 A B AB and O 154
 M N and MN 156
 Rh 15
- Agranulocytosis "26
- Anemias 196
 acute post hemorrhagic "08
 Addisonian 198
 aplastic 202
 Biermer's 198
 classification 13
 congenital hemolytic 204
 discussion of 196 197
 diseases 136
 hemolytic 196 197
 pernicious 198
 sickle cell 204
 simple achlorhydric "00
- Antibodies blocking 173
- Antibody heterophile 191
- Anticoagulants 28
 function of 28 29
 list of 29
 preparation of 218
- Aplastic anemia x ray in "09
- Appendix 231
- Auto agglutinin 11

B

BALANCE 23

- Basophilic cells 15 "7
 tippling "11
- Bausch & Lomb Spectronic "0
 procedure hemoglobin estimation "0
- Benzidine solution "19
- Bibliography 266
- Biermer's anemia 198
- Bleeding time 133
 Duke method 133
 Ivy method 134
 normal values 133 134
 procedures 133
- Blocking antibodies 143
- Blood 9
 cell 9
 platelets 146
 red 91 97
 white "5- 9 8, 8"
 coagulation of 137
 collection of 10
 composition of 10
 function 1
 losses 156
 group 153
 test for 153
 lancet 11 14
 oxalated "11
 preservation of "9
 picture in disease 196
 preparation of "1
 blood sedimentation "9
 smear "9
 serum "11
 typing See ABO grouping 160
- Bone marrow smears 189
- Buffer solution 83
 for Wright's stain 83

C

CABOT rings 97



F

- Eosinophil count 181
 Eosinophilic leukocyte 18
 Erythremia 274
 Erythroblastosis fetalis 278
 Erythrocyte count See Red cell count 49
 Essential thrombocytopenic purpura 718

F

- Fibrin 137
 Fibrinogen 132
 Filament and non filament classification 90
 Finger puncture 13
 Frigility test 109
 modified Sanford method 117
 normal and abnormal result 113
 procedure for 109
 Sanford method 110
 set-up for 111
 significance of 109

G

- Giemsa stain 83 188
 Glandular fever See Infectious mononucleosis 230
 Gower's solution 49

H

- Haden-Hastings method hemoglobin estimation 64
 Hayem's solution 49
 Helge Clinico procedure hemoglobin estimation 68
 Hematin acid 5
 Hematocrit reading 101
 high and low reading 107
 normal value 107
 procedures for 103
 Sanford Magath method 104

- Hematocrit reading significance of 101 107
 Van Allen method 105
 Wintrobe method 103
 Hematologic word formation of 214
 Hematoma 19
 causes of 19
 Hemocytometer See Counting chamber 39
 Hemoglobin 56
 estimation 10 13 121-123
 normal value 56
 procedures 57 73
 Hemoglobinemia 56
 Hemoglobinometers 56-73
 Hemolysis of red cells 109
 Hemolytic anemia 196 197
 Hemophilia 240
 Hemorrhage 214
 Hemorrhagic diathesis 217
 Heparin 29
 Heterophile antibody test 111
 differential test 194
 discussion of 191
 presumptive test 191
 procedure 191
 report of 193 195
 serum dilution 193
 Howell theory of blood coagulation 132 138
 Howell-Jolly body 97
 Hypertonic solution 31
 Hypotonic solution 31

I

- Icteric neutropenia same as Malpignant neutropenia 276
 thrombocytopenic same as Essential thrombocytopenic purpura 718
 In liver red cell 119
 Infant obtaining blood from 27
 Infectious mononucleosis 191
 blood picture in 230
 Ictonic solution 31

- Capillary resistance test 150
 illustration of positive test 151
 procedure for 152
 significance of 150
- Cell counts *See* Specific types
- Cell pack same as hematocrit reading 101
 suspension 31
 volume percent same as hematocrit reading 101
- Cells nomenclature of
 platelets 146
 red cells ■ Plate IV
 white cells 85
- Centrifuge 30
- Chlorosis *See* Simple achlorhydric anemia 200
- Clot retraction time 139
 normal values 139
 procedure for 139
 significance of 139
- Clotting time same as Coagulation time 135
- Coagulation of blood 132
- Coagulation time 135
 capillary blood methods 135
 capillary tube method 136
 Howell method 138
 Lee and White method 13
 normal values 135
 procedures 135
 slide method 135
- Cold agglutinins 171
- Coleman Spectrophotometer procedure hemoglobin estimation 73
- Color index 124
 long method 124
 normal values 124
 short method 125
- Complete blood count 43
 sample report 34
- Coombs test 173
 direct 174
 indirect 175
- Counting chamber 39
 area and depth of 4
- Cover glass method 81
- Cross match 166
 preparation for 167
 procedure for 168
 set up for 169
 sources of error 171
- Cutler method in elimination rate 97
- Cyanmethemoglobin method hemoglobin estimation "0 "3
- D
- Dare method hemoglobin estimation 50
- Degenerative shift 80
- Dictionary of hematologic words 244-249
- Dicumamol 140
- Differential white cell count 10
 directions for making count ■
 filament and non filament classification 90
 in disease 77
 method of examining slide 88
 normal values 71
 procedure for "9
 sample report 88
 Schilling classification 83-89
 significance of 76 "
 summary of procedure 90
- Diluting fluid eosinophil count 182
 platelet count 147
 red cell count 19
 white cell count 35
- Disease 9
 anemia 196
 hemorrhagic disease 21"
 leukemias 210
 miscellaneous 221
- Donor blood 144
- Drinking solution "0 "3

- Pipet red cell 49
white cell 35
- Plasma cells Plate II and III
composition of 10
obtaining 29
- Platelet count 145
direct method 147
indirect method 148
normal value 146
procedures for 147
significance of 146
- Platelets development of 146
function of 146
new terminology 146
seen with high power objective 149
- Polycythemia vera 224
- Posthemorrhagic anemia 208
- Promegakaryocyte 146
- Prothrombin time 140
method using Samplastin 147
method using Solu Platin 141
normal values 140
procedure for 140
prothrombin activity 144 145
significance of 140
- Purpura hemorrhagic *See* Essential thrombocytopenic purpura 718
- R**
- Red cell count 49
calculations for 53
charging counting chamber 50
counting the cells 51 52
diluting fluids 49
dilution for 49
normal values 49
pipet for 49
procedure for 49
sources of error 55
summary of 54
- Red cell fragility test 109
hemolytic 109
indices 119
- Red cell decriptive term 92
examination of stained red cell 91 92
sedimentation rate 93
stippling lead poisoning and 92
further examinations of 93
- Rees and Ecker diluting fluid 147
preparation of 241
- Regenerative shift 89
- Registry 250
answers to type questions 706
type questions 700
- Reticulocyte count 116
dry method 117
normal value 118
procedures for 116
significance of 116
wet method 118
- Rh factor 157
in pregnancy 158
in transfusions 15
tests for 163 164 165
theory of 157
- Rh titer 146
dilution of tubes 18
procedure for 146
report of 148
- Rh typing 163
slide method 163
test tube method 165
- Rouleaux formation 140 141
- Rumpel Leede test 157
- S**
- Sahli-Helland method of hemoglobin estimation 62
- Sanford method for fragility test 110
- Sanford Magath method of hemocrit reading 104
- Saturation index 130
definition 130
long method 130
normal values 130
short method 131
- Schilling classification 88 89

J

- JANUICE spherocytic See
Congenital hemolytic anemia
206

L

- LEUKOCYTES 179
 procedure for 180
Lead poisoning stippled red cell
 in 92
Leake and Cuy diluting fluid 147
 preparation of 240
Lee White method in coagulation
 time 137
Leede-Rumpel test 152
Leitz photometer procedure
 hemoglobin estimation 96
Leukemia 210-212
 classification of 210
 chronic granulocytic 213
 lymphocytic 211
 monocytic 215
Leukocyte count See White cell
 count 33
Leukoerythrocytosis 31
 cell in 78
 eosinophilic 8
Leukopenia 31
Lymphatic leukemia same as
 Lymphocytic leukemia 211
Leukocytes 78

M

- MACROCYTE 92
Malaria parasite 18
 examination for 187
 thick smear method 188
 thin smear method 187
Malignant neutropenia 224
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin
 121
 long method 122
 normal values 121
 short method 123

- Mean corpuscular hemoglobin
 concentration 128
 long method 129
 normal values 129
 short method 130
Mean corpuscular volume 127
 long method 125
 normal values 125
 short method 127

- Measure table of 236
Megakaryoblast 146
Megakaryocyte 146
Microscope 42
Monocytes 48
Myelogenous leukemia same as
 granulocytic leukemia 213

N

- NEEDLES 16
 sterilization of 18
Neutropenia 226
Neutrophilic leukocytes 48
Normal saline 71
Normal values summary of
 232-233
Nucleated red cell plate 14
 page 92

O

- Osmotic 71
Oxalated blood 29
 test tubes preparation of 211
Oxidation See Ferrous
 stain 211
Oxyhemoglobin 56-58 19

P

- PERIPHERAL ANEMIA 188
PEROXIDASE TEST 211
Pfeiffer 152
PH buffer solution 83
Pictet-Hammett procedure
 hemoglobin estimation 72
Pipet 28
 cleaning of 48

- Pipet, red cell 49
 white cell 35
- Plasma cell Plate II and III
 composition of 10
 obtaining 99
- Platelet count 145
 direct method 147
 indirect method 148
 normal value 146
 procedures for 147
 significance of 146
- Platelet development of 146
 function of 146
 new terminology 146
 seen with high power objective 149
- Polycythemia vera 294
- Polymorphous hemorrhagic anemia 208
- Promegakaryocyte 146
- Prothrombin time 140
 method using Simplastin 142
 method using Solu Ila tin 141
 normal value 140
 procedure for 140
 prothrombin activity 144 145
 significance of 140
- Purpura hemorrhagic See Essential thrombocytopenic purpura 218
- R**
- Red cell count 49
 calculations for 53
 charging counting chamber 50
 counting the cells 51 52
 diluting fluids 49
 dilution for 49
 normal values 49
 pipet for 49
 procedure 49
 sources of error 55
 summary of 54
- Red cell fragility test 109
 hemolysis 109
 index 119
- Red cell descriptive term 92
 examination of stained red cell 91 92
 sedimentation rate 93
 tipping lead poisoning and 92
 further examinations of 93
- Ries and Ecker diluting fluid 147
 preparation of 241
- Regenerative shift 101
- Registry 250
 answers to type questions 246
 type questions 250
- Reticulocyte count 116
 dry method 117
 normal values 118
 procedures for 116
 significance of 116
 wet method 118
- Rh factor 157
 in pregnancy 158
 in transfusion 157
 tests for 163 164 165
 theory of 15
- Rh titer 16
 dilutions of tube 168
 procedure for 160
 report of 178
- Rh typing 163
 slide method 163
 test tube method 165
- Rouleaux formation 170 172
- Rumpel Leele test 159
- S**
- SAHLI HELBIG method hemoglobin estimation 62
- Sanford method for fragility test 110
- Sanford Magath method of hemocrit reading 104
- Saturation index 130
 definition 130
 long method 130
 normal values 130
 short method 131
- Sedimentation classification 88 89

- Sedimentation rate 93
 correction of 99
 Cutter method 97
 normal value 94
 procedures for 94
 tubes 96
 Westergren method 94
 Wintrol & Landsberg method 98

 Serum preparation of 31
 Serum sickness 191
 Shift to the left 89
 degenerative 89
 regenerative 89
 Sickle cell anemia 204
 examination 106
 bisulfite method 107
 illustration of cells 106 109
 procedures for 107
 significance of 106
 wet preparation method 108
 Sickleleukemia same as Sickle cell anemia 204
 Simplastin prothrombin time and 142
 Slide method of blood smear 80
 Smears making blood smear 79
 good and poor smear 82
 Solu Plastin prothrombin time and 141
 Solutions 236
 preparation of 236
 Specific substance A and B 155
 Spherocytes 207
 Spherocytic jaundice same as Congenital hemolytic anemia 206
 Spinal cell count 184 185
 differential 185
 procedure for 184
 total 184
 Staining blood slides 83
 procedure for 83 84
 Staining cell 82
 Stain Giemsa 82 188
 oxidase See Peroxidase 211
 peroxidase 211

 Stain vital 116 117
 Wright's 82 83
 preparation of 243
 Subgroup 159
 Summary of normal value 237
 Syringes 17
 frozen 26
 sterilization of 18

 T

 TALLQVIST method hemoglobin estimation 60
 Tannen's diluting fluid 182
 preparation of 212
 Target cell 92
 Terminology 244
 interpretation of 244
 Tests for blood grouping 153
 summary of 32
 Thrombocytes 146
 Thrombopenia See Leucopenia
 thrombocytopenic purpura 211
 Thrombocytopenic purpura 218
 Thromboplastin 28 132
 Toxigenic granulation 227
 Transfusion blood 166
 Typing See ABO grouping 160
 and Rh typing 163

 U

 UNIVERSAL donor 160
 recipient 156

 V

 VACUTAINER 72
 Van Allen method of hemocrit finding 161
 Venipuncture 1
 materials needed 151
 needles used 17
 technique 17 21
 syringes 17
 using B-D Vacutainer 22
 Vital stain 116

- Volume index 12
 definition 127
 long method 12
 normal values 127
 short method 129
- W
- Weights table of 236
- Werthof's disease same as
 Essential thrombocythemic
 purpura 218
- Wet preparation method 107 108
- Westergren method of in
 sedimentation rate 94
- White cell development of
 plate II page 15 16
 identifying 86 8
 in normal blood 16
 in m m elature 83
- White cell count 33-47
 calculations for 46
 charging counting chamber
 38
 counting the cells 41
 diluting fluid 3
 dilution for 36
 procedure 35
 sources of error 47
- Wintrobe method for hematocrit
 reading 103
- Wintrobe-I in large method of
 sedimentation rate 98
- Wright's stain 82 83
 buffer for 83 243
 preparation of 243
- X
- X-ray aplastic anemia 202
 in treatment of leukemia 212

